

ESTTA Tracking number: **ESTTA687791**

Filing date: **08/05/2015**

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
BEFORE THE TRADEMARK TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

Proceeding	91215699
Party	Plaintiff Boston Scientific Corporation, on behalf of itself and its subsidiaries, Asthmatx, Inc.
Correspondence Address	BRADLEY J WALZ WINTHROP & WEINSTINE PA CAPELLA TOWER SUITE 3500, 225 SOUTH SIXTH STREET MINNEAPOLIS, MN 55402 UNITED STATES trademark@winthrop.com, sbaird@winthrop.com, tsitzmann@winthrop.com, jbriley@winthrop.com
Submission	Testimony For Plaintiff
Filer's Name	Timothy D. Sitzmann
Filer's e-mail	trademark@winthrop.com, sbaird@winthrop.com, bwalz@winthrop.com, tsitzmann@winthrop.com, jbriley@winthrop.com
Signature	/Timothy D. Sitzmann/
Date	08/05/2015
Attachments	Deposition Transcript - Karen Passafaro - Redacted - Full with signatures.pdf(2948598 bytes) Segment 001 of Deposition - Karen Passafaro - Non-Confidential Exhibits.pdf(5215238 bytes) Segment 002 of Deposition - Karen Passafaro - Non-Confidential Exhibits.pdf(5198503 bytes) Segment 003 of Deposition - Karen Passafaro - Non-Confidential Exhibits.pdf(4003570 bytes) Deposition Transcript - Matthew Sprague - Redacted - Full with signatures.pdf(405907 bytes) 20150805 Certificate of Service - Passafaro and Sprague Transcripts.pdf(44287 bytes)

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
BEFORE THE TRADEMARK TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

Opposition No. 91215699

In the matter of Application Serial No.:
85/806,379
Filed: December 19, 2012
For the mark: HOLAIRA
Published in the Trademark Official Gazette
on December 3, 2013

Boston Scientific Corp. and
Asthmatx, Inc.,

Opposers,

v.
Holaira, Inc.,

Applicant.

DEPOSITION OF KAREN M. PASSAFARO

Thursday, April 9th, 2015

8:50 a.m.

Held At:

Latham & Watkins, LLP
200 Clarendon Street
Boston, Massachusetts

REPORTED BY:

Maureen O'Connor Pollard, RMR, CLR, CSR #149108

1 APPEARANCES:

2 FOR THE OPPOSERS:

3 BY: BRADLEY J. WALZ, ESQ.

4 WINTHROP & WEINSTINE, PA

5 Capella Tower, Suite 3500

6 225 South Sixth Street

7 Minneapolis Minnesota 55402

8 612-604-6400

9 bwalz@winthrop.com

10
11 FOR THE APPLICANT:

12 BY: DENNIS E. HANSEN, ESQ.

13 OPPENHEIMER, WOLFF & DONNELLY, LLP

14 222 South Ninth Street, Suite 2000

15 Minneapolis, Minnesota 55402

16 612-607-7000

17 dhansen@oppenheimer.com

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

INDEX

EXAMINATION

PAGE

KAREN M. PASSAFARO

BY MR. WALZ

6

BY MR. HANSEN

65

BY MR. WALZ

161

OPPOSER EXHIBITS

NO.

DESCRIPTION

PAGE

1 Document titled Alair Marketing

Expenses, Bates BSC000860..... 21

2 Document titled U.S. Bronchial

Thermoplasty Marketing Spend, Bates

BSC001507..... 21

3 Copy of marketing flyer, Bates

BSC000834 through 836..... 34

4 Patient brochures titled A New

Procedure for Severe Asthma, Bates

BSC000558 through 700..... 40

5 Screen shots from Bronchial

Thermoplasty website, Bates BSC000797,
812 and 813..... 43

6 Bronchial Thermoplasty website pages,

Bates BSC000814 through 821..... 47

1	7	Printout of Bronchial Thermoplasty	
2		website pages, Bates BSC000825 through	
3		833.....	54
4	8	Document titled U.S. Bronchial	
5		Thermoplasty Revenue, Bates BSC001506....	60
6		

APPLICANT'S EXHIBITS

10	NO.	DESCRIPTION	PAGE
11	1	Copy of trademark search, Bates	65
12		BSC000119 through 453.....	
13	2	Petition for Cancellation, Bates	80
14		BSC000735 through 739.....	
15	3	Answer, Bates BSC000728 through 731.....	81
16	4	Alair Directions for Use, Bates	85
17		BSC000662 through 675.....	
18	5	Alair Operator's Manual, Bates	85
19		BSC000677 through 692.....	
20	6	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	102
21		Bates BSC000794.....	
22	7	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	108
23		Bates BSC000797 through 799.....	
24	8	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	110
25		Bates BSC000803 through 805.....	

1	9	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	112
2		Bates BSC000806 through 808.....	
3	10	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	114
4		Bates BSC000812 and 813.....	
5	11	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	117
6		Bates BSC000814 through 816.....	
7	12	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	118
8		Bates BSC000817 and 818.....	
9	13	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	119
10		Bates BSC000819 through 821.....	
11	14	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	120
12		Bates BSC000822 through 824.....	
13	15	Screen shot of btforasthma website,	125
14		Bates BSC000825 through 827.....	
15	16	Screen shot for btforasthma website,	129
16		Bates BSC000828 and 829.....	
17	17	Brochure titled A New Procedure for	131
18		Severe Asthma, Bates BSC000558 through	
19		569.....	
20	18	PowerPoint titled Asthmatx, Bates	140
21		BSC000623 through 643.....	
22			
23			
24			
25			

1 P R O C E E D I N G S

2

3 KAREN M. PASSAFARO,

4 having been first duly identified and sworn, was

5 examined and testified as follows:

6 DIRECT EXAMINATION

7 BY MR. WALZ:

8 Q. Karen, good morning.

9 A. Good morning.

10 Q. Just before we get into this, I want

11 to just let you know a little bit about the

12 format, how it's going to happen today.

13 Dennis and I had a discussion and

14 so -- and had made an agreement that what will

15 happen is I'm going to have a direct examination

16 of you, and then when I've completed my direct

17 examination, Dennis will have an opportunity to

18 cross-examine you, and then following his

19 cross-examination I will have an opportunity to

20 redirect. So just so you're aware, that's going

21 to be the format for today.

22 If at any time, you know, you want to

23 take a break, just let us know. I'm amenable to

24 taking breaks whenever the witness is. I don't

25 know if --

1 MR. WALZ: Dennis, do you have a
2 problem with that?

3 MR. HANSEN: I think just the one
4 caveat to that is if there's a question pending,
5 the witness should answer the question pending
6 before we take a break. But otherwise,
7 absolutely we can take a break whenever.

8 BY MR. WALZ:

9 Q. So just let us know whenever you'd
10 like to take a break and we'll do that.

11 As you notice, we have a court
12 reporter here, and so she's going to be taking
13 down your testimony today. When you're
14 responding to a question yes or no, make sure
15 it's a yes or no, not a yah, so that it's just
16 clear for the record.

17 So with that, I think we can begin.

18 A. Okay.

19 Q. Can you say and spell your name for
20 the record?

21 A. Karen Passafaro, P-A-S-S-A-F-A-R-O,
22 Karen, K-A-R-E-N.

23 Q. And what's your educational
24 background?

25 A. So I have a bachelor of science in

1 bioengineering from UC-San Diego, University of
2 California-San Diego, and an MBA from University
3 of Phoenix.

4 Q. And what was your work experience
5 prior to Boston Scientific?

6 A. So I joined Boston Scientific in 2010
7 as vice-president of marketing. Prior to that,
8 I was vice-president of marketing for Asthmatx.
9 So basically with the same job and the same
10 function, Boston Scientific acquired Asthmatx,
11 so I've been basically doing this job for the
12 last ten years, since 2005.

13 Q. And so what was your position, your
14 first position at Boston Scientific?

15 A. Vice-president of marketing.

16 Q. Has it always been vice-president of
17 marketing?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And your duties as vice-president of
20 marketing, what are those?

21 A. So I manage the Bronchial Thermoplasty
22 franchise within the pulmonary group, which is
23 part of the endoscopy division of Boston
24 Scientific, they're based here in Marlborough,
25 and I'm responsible for the global marketing of

1 the Bronchial Thermoplasty franchise.

2 Q. Turning now to the Alair market, who
3 was responsible, or who created the Alair mark?

4 A. Asthmatx.

5 Q. And what was the process for selecting
6 the Alair mark?

7 A. So it was created in like 1999, and it
8 was a typical process for a trademark or a
9 product name. It was created prior to my
10 joining Asthmatx. A group looked at a number of
11 different names, you know, did -- bounced ideas
12 off, and then selected a name, and then had
13 our -- they had the legal team do a trademark
14 search.

15 Q. And why was the Alair mark chosen?

16 A. So Asthmatx was formed to create a
17 product to relieve asthma sufferers, so the
18 product was always focused on asthma, severe
19 asthma, and opening up the airways to allow
20 people to breathe easier. And Alair, or "all
21 air," kind of had that connotation of improving
22 air -- you know, increasing airflow, and that
23 resonated with asthma patients who had the
24 constriction of their airways.

25 Q. And when was the Alair mark adopted?

1 A. I believe it was 1999 was when the
2 mark was chosen, and I believe that's when the
3 legal trademark was filed.

4 Q. Okay. Has the mark continuously been
5 used?

6 A. Yes. It was -- the product was -- in
7 '99 it was in a preclinical, you know, R&D
8 testing, and then clinical trials started in
9 around the 2000 period. All of the clinical
10 trials that Asthmatx did used the Alair product,
11 and that name has been in existence continuously
12 and through FDA approval and the commercial
13 launch of the product. The name has been
14 consistent.

15 Q. And how did Boston Scientific come to
16 own the Alair mark?

17 A. So Asthmatx got FDA approval in 2010.
18 At that point Boston Scientific made a bid for
19 the company, and acquired us in October of that
20 year, October, 2010, after we were
21 commercially -- FDA-approved and commercially on
22 the market.

23 Q. Okay.

24 A. And Boston Scientific acquired the
25 company, the product, and all the trademarks.

1 Q. So what good or goods is the Alair
2 mark used in connection with?

3 A. So it's the Alair Bronchial
4 Thermoplasty system is the full name of the
5 product, if you will. So there's the Alair
6 controller, which is a piece of capital
7 equipment that delivers RF to the Alair
8 Catheter, which is a single use disposable that
9 is used through a bronchoscope, and together the
10 catheter, the Alair Catheter and the Alair
11 controller compose the Alair Bronchial
12 Thermoplasty system.

13 Q. Okay. And why is the Alair mark used
14 to identify both the system and the individual
15 components?

16 A. Because you need both pieces of
17 equipment to do the therapy. You need the
18 controller to deliver energy, and you need the
19 catheter. It also, from a user instructions, it
20 was helpful to be able to call out specifically
21 a catheter -- the Alair Catheter plugs into the
22 Alair controller. And also, to avoid any type
23 of misuse of either the catheter or controller
24 being used with someone else's controller or
25 catheter or generator. We, for safety reasons,

1 we wanted to make sure that the two, the
2 catheter and the controller, were always used
3 together. The concern of having somebody
4 develop a knockoff catheter that might be used
5 with our controller, we wanted to avoid that.

6 Q. And what are the current indications
7 for the Alair System?

8 A. So in the United States, the FDA
9 indication is for adults with severe asthma that
10 are on standard medication, which is ICS,
11 inhaled corticosteroids, and long-acting beta
12 agonists, or standard medication, and those
13 patients are still symptomatic.

14 Q. Okay. And what are the prospective
15 indications for the Alair System?

16 A. Meaning potential indications or
17 future?

18 Q. Or potential, yes, future.

19 A. There definitely has always been plans
20 for potential clinical studies going into the
21 pediatric market, so the 12 to 15, 12 to
22 18-year-old, and also looking into patients with
23 asthma and COPD.

24 Q. Okay.

25 A. Or chronic obstructive pulmonary

1 disease. I don't know if I should talk in
2 acronyms.

3 Q. COPD is short.

4 And what services or service is the
5 Alair mark used in connection with?

6 A. So in addition to the product itself,
7 we also do a lot of training. So physician
8 training is very important. Training
9 physicians, staff, nursing, anesthesiology in
10 the use of the product, and so we use the
11 trademark for the training services that we
12 provide as well.

13 Q. What do the training services entail?

14 A. Use of the product, you know, a full
15 product inservice, if you will, on how to use
16 the catheter, how to hook it up to the
17 controller, what are the right indications for
18 the patient, patient management, how should a
19 patient be, you know, sedated and, you know,
20 prior to the procedure pre-op, post-op type of
21 training.

22 Q. Okay. And how do you market those
23 training services?

24 A. So we have a direct sales force with
25 Boston Scientific that is around the world,

1 typically. And the sales reps will work with
2 the physicians who are interested in performing
3 the procedure, and then work with their
4 hospital, who is the ultimate purchaser of the
5 product, and they will, you know, arrange for
6 training programs, you know, when the physicians
7 are interested in getting started with the
8 procedure.

9 Q. And how long has the Alair mark been
10 used in connection with teaching in the training
11 services?

12 A. A lot of the training was actually
13 started in our clinical trials, so that started
14 around 2000. And then from a commercial
15 standpoint, in 2010, in May of 2010 was when we
16 started to, you know, actually sell the product
17 after FDA approval. It's been used continuously
18 since that time.

19 Q. Okay.

20 A. And it started with Asthmatx. And
21 then when we were acquired, Boston Scientific
22 continued with the same training. The programs
23 and training systems that we had put in place,
24 Boston Scientific continued that same training,
25 and actually expanded it to now over 30

1 countries.

2 Q. So does Boston Scientific have a
3 marketing plan or strategy for the Alair System?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And what is that marketing plan or
6 strategy?

7 A. So it's to grow the business, and
8 increase revenue obviously. We look at number
9 of controller placements and new controller
10 sales, and then look at repeat catheter business
11 around each of those controller sales, if you
12 will.

13 [REDACTED]
14 [REDACTED]
15 [REDACTED]
16 [REDACTED]
17 [REDACTED]
18 [REDACTED]
19 [REDACTED]
20 [REDACTED]
21 [REDACTED]

22 Q. Okay. And who developed the marketing
23 plan or strategy?

24 A. I did.

25 Q. And who is responsible for the

1 marketing budget?

2 A. I am.

3 Q. And as you're coming up with the
4 marketing plan or strategy, what factors do you
5 consider when developing the strategy?

6 A. [REDACTED]

7 [REDACTED]

8 [REDACTED]

9 [REDACTED]

10 [REDACTED]

11 [REDACTED]

12 [REDACTED]

13 [REDACTED]

14 [REDACTED]

15 [REDACTED]

16 [REDACTED]

17 [REDACTED]

18 [REDACTED]

19 [REDACTED]

20 [REDACTED]

21 We'd also look at where we were from a
22 data standpoint, what new data was coming out,
23 and how we would want to promote that data, so
24 that would affect the marketing plan and the
25 budget.

1 We would look at potential competition
2 and what was the competitive landscape at the
3 time. That could weigh into the budget, of
4 course.

5 And then we'd look at, you know, just
6 market dynamics. If there was -- you know, from
7 a society standpoint we'd look at were we
8 getting endorsements from the societies, were we
9 getting reimbursement or insurance coverage
10 approvals. That would also affect our ability
11 to spend in marketing based on what we expected
12 our revenue could be.

13 Q. And how would you define the market
14 for the Alair System?

15 A. Our market is for the severe asthmatic
16 who is still symptomatic, so adults, severe
17 asthma, and symptomatic. More specifically, our
18 market is a device-based therapy for asthma, so
19 devices to treat asthma is our core market.

20 Q. And you had mentioned earlier that you
21 consider competitors in developing your
22 marketing plan?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. So what competitors does -- well, I
25 guess what competitors does Boston Scientific

1 have for the Alair System?

2 A. At this time we have no direct
3 competitors in the device business for severe
4 asthma.

5 Q. Are you aware of any medical devices
6 under development that could potentially compete
7 with the Alair System?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. And what device would that be?

10 A. That would be the device developed by
11 Innovative Pulmonary Solutions, now known as
12 Holaira, a device using RF energy focusing on
13 COPD, but it's very possible that that device
14 could also be used in asthma.

15 Q. So what are the similarities between
16 the Holaira device as you know it under
17 development and the Alair System?

18 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

19 BY MR. WALZ:

20 Q. You can answer.

21 A. So my understanding is that it's
22 definitely a catheter-based system that attaches
23 to a controller, I believe it's RF energy, and
24 they're ablating or using heat to treat the
25 nerves within the airway. It's done

1 bronchoscopically. It's performed by a
2 bronchoscopist or a pulmonologist who
3 specializes in bronchoscopy, very similar, the
4 exact same customer base, so very similar
5 mechanism and process for a device.

6 Q. And all that detail you just testified
7 to with respect to the Holaira device, how do
8 you know that?

9 A. Having seen directly a presentation at
10 the European Respiratory Society meeting in
11 September, the company presented their
12 information, presented the clinical data,
13 presented, you know, a pretty in-depth slide
14 presentation on how it works.

15 Also the physicians that are doing the
16 procedure, the early feasibility studies, I know
17 those physicians very well and speak with them
18 often. They were in our clinical trials as
19 well.

20 Q. And what similarities exist between
21 the Holaira mark and the Alair mark?

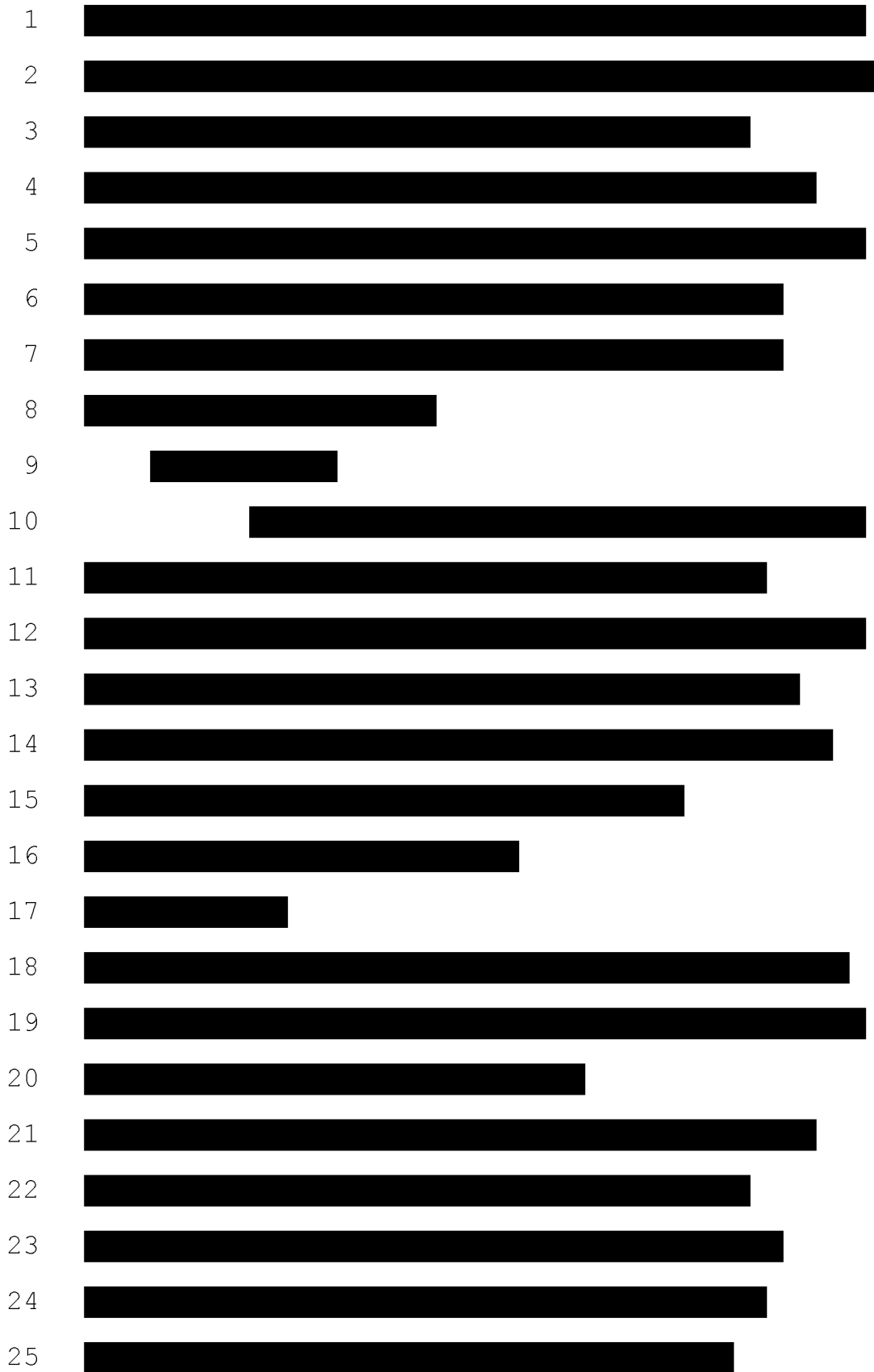
22 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.
23 Object to the extent it calls for a legal
24 conclusion.

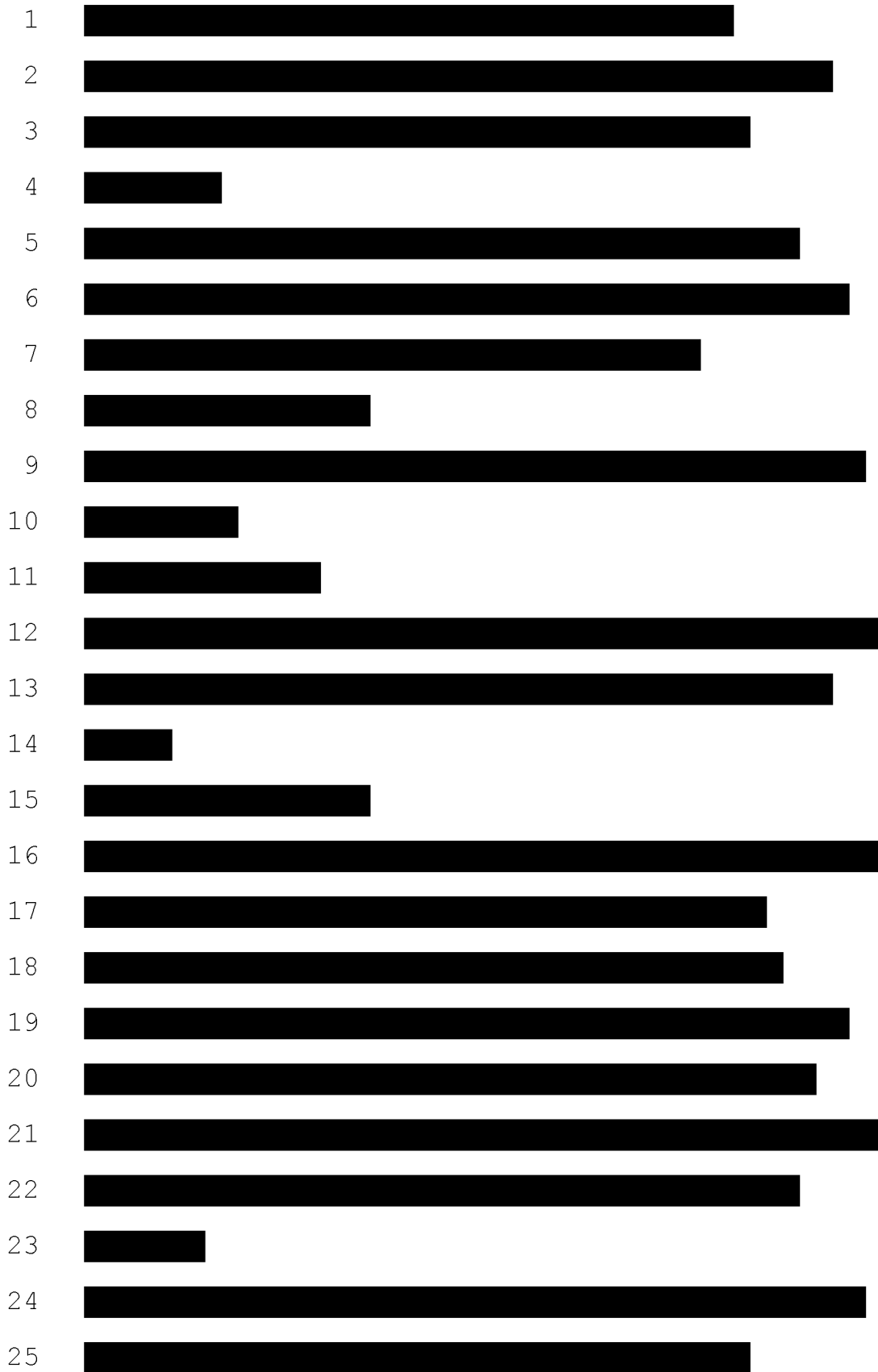
25 A. So I think just the names are very

1 similar. You know, Alair and Holaira sound very
2 similar. I thought it was interesting, the name
3 came about only in the last few years. The
4 company started as IPS, that's how we always
5 referred to the company, as IPS, and then the
6 company changed the name around 2011, 2012, I
7 think, right as we were kind of really getting
8 pretty broad spread use of the Alair System. It
9 was -- we all noted that it was kind of odd to
10 have such a different name change to something
11 that was so similar to a product that was now
12 commercially available.

13 Q. How is the budget prepared, the
14 marketing budget referred to, how is that
15 prepared at Boston Scientific?

16 A. [REDACTED]
17 [REDACTED]
18 [REDACTED]
19 [REDACTED]
20 [REDACTED]
21 [REDACTED]
22 [REDACTED]
23 [REDACTED]
24 [REDACTED]
25 [REDACTED]





1	[REDACTED]
2	[REDACTED]
3	[REDACTED]
4	[REDACTED]
5	[REDACTED]
6	[REDACTED]
7	[REDACTED]
8	[REDACTED]
9	[REDACTED]
10	[REDACTED]
11	[REDACTED]
12	[REDACTED]
13	[REDACTED]
14	[REDACTED]
15	[REDACTED]
16	[REDACTED]
17	[REDACTED]
18	[REDACTED]
19	[REDACTED]
20	[REDACTED]
21	[REDACTED]
22	[REDACTED]
23	[REDACTED]
24	[REDACTED]
25	[REDACTED]

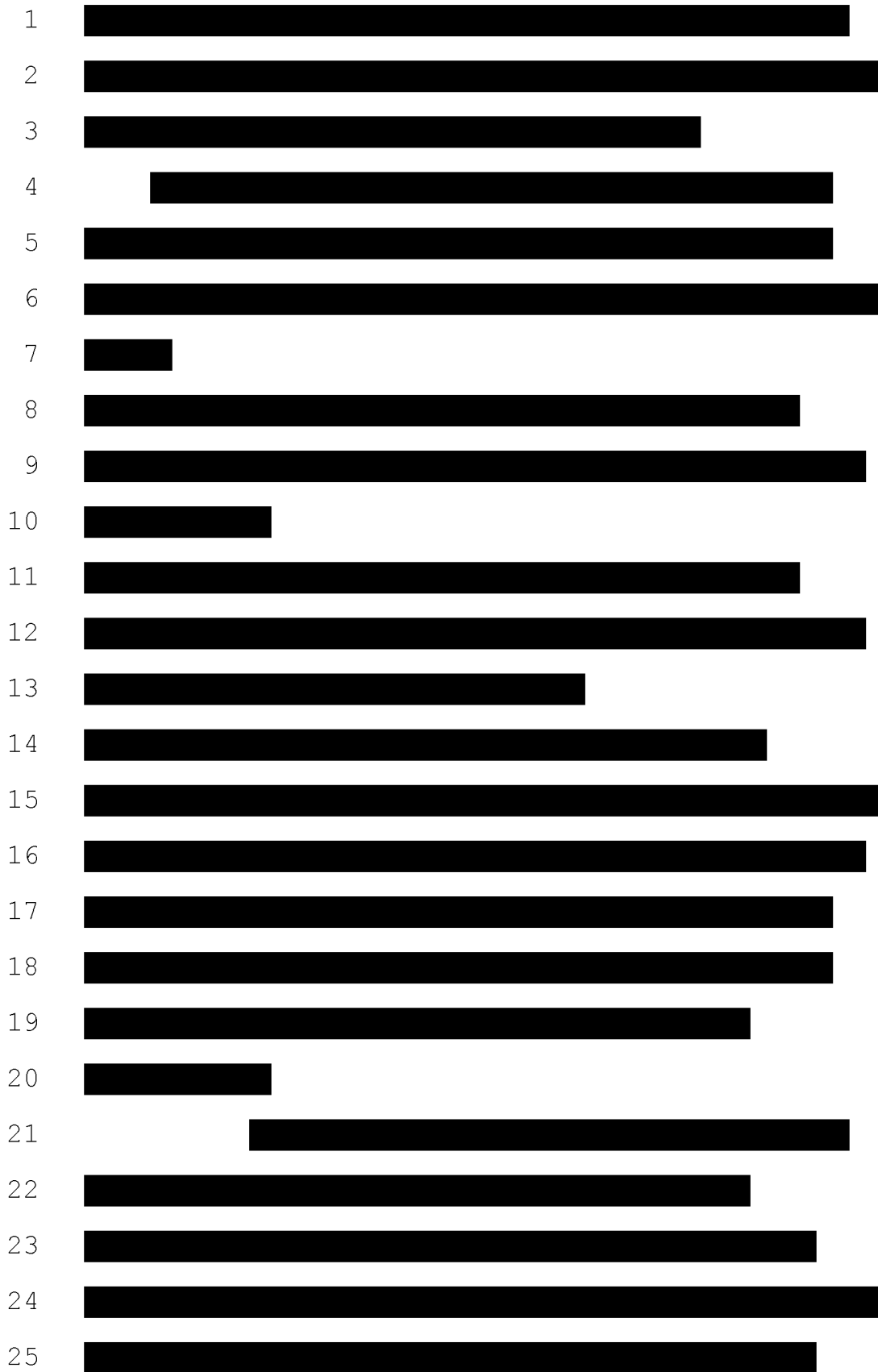
1	[REDACTED]
2	[REDACTED]
3	[REDACTED]
4	[REDACTED]
5	[REDACTED]
6	[REDACTED]
7	[REDACTED]
8	[REDACTED]
9	[REDACTED]
10	[REDACTED]
11	[REDACTED]
12	[REDACTED]
13	[REDACTED]
14	[REDACTED]
15	[REDACTED]
16	[REDACTED]
17	[REDACTED]
18	[REDACTED]
19	[REDACTED]
20	[REDACTED]
21	[REDACTED]
22	[REDACTED]
23	[REDACTED]
24	[REDACTED]
25	[REDACTED]

1	[REDACTED]
2	[REDACTED]
3	[REDACTED]
4	[REDACTED]
5	[REDACTED]
6	[REDACTED]
7	[REDACTED]
8	[REDACTED]
9	[REDACTED]
10	[REDACTED]
11	[REDACTED]
12	[REDACTED]
13	[REDACTED]
14	[REDACTED]
15	[REDACTED]
16	[REDACTED]
17	[REDACTED]
18	[REDACTED]
19	[REDACTED]
20	[REDACTED]
21	[REDACTED]
22	[REDACTED]
23	[REDACTED]
24	[REDACTED]
25	[REDACTED]

1	[REDACTED]
2	[REDACTED]
3	[REDACTED]
4	[REDACTED]
5	[REDACTED]
6	[REDACTED]
7	[REDACTED]
8	[REDACTED]
9	[REDACTED]
10	[REDACTED]
11	[REDACTED]
12	[REDACTED]
13	[REDACTED]
14	[REDACTED]
15	[REDACTED]
16	[REDACTED]
17	[REDACTED]
18	[REDACTED]
19	[REDACTED]
20	[REDACTED]
21	[REDACTED]
22	[REDACTED]
23	[REDACTED]
24	[REDACTED]
25	[REDACTED]







1 [REDACTED]
2 [REDACTED]
3 [REDACTED]
4 [REDACTED]
5 [REDACTED]
6 [REDACTED]
7 [REDACTED]
8 [REDACTED]

9 Q. Can you explain the reimbursement
10 portion of the marketing in a little more
11 detail, what that entails?

12 A. So reimbursement is really focused on
13 insurance companies and getting, you know,
14 coding, coverage, and payment. So first you
15 have to have a CPT code that a physician and a
16 hospital can use to bill. We -- that group was
17 behind all the efforts to get a CPT code for the
18 Alair System, and that happened, I believe, in
19 2012.

20 And then once you have coding, then
21 your big focus is on coverage, and so that's
22 making sure that all of the large payers in the
23 United States, and we deal with over 100
24 different insurance companies, that they know
25 the data, that they know the safety and the

1 efficacy, and they know all about the product
2 and the benefits of the product. And so we have
3 a team of people that are focused on making
4 payers aware of it, and then they're also
5 working with the physicians locally to help them
6 maneuver through the reimbursement process. So
7 if Blue Cross/Blue Shield doesn't cover it, then
8 the patient and the physician have to ask on a
9 case-by-case basis. So we have a team of people
10 in the corporate office, as well as five people
11 in the field that are supporting the
12 reimbursement.

13 So it's often looked at as kind of a
14 marketing expense because it's helping the
15 physician gain approval to then treat that
16 patient and have the hospital buy the catheters.

17 Q. You mentioned that Boston Scientific
18 acquired or obtained a CPT code?

19 A. Correct.

20 Q. So what's required to obtain a CPT
21 code?

22 A. So clearly the FDA approval, it has to
23 be proven safe and effective, it needs the
24 support of the society that will ultimately be
25 providing that procedure or that service, in

1 this case it was the American College of Chest
2 Physicians and the American Thoracic Society,
3 and we'd been working with those societies, you
4 know, even before our FDA approval, making sure
5 that they were aware that it was coming and what
6 it was and how it worked.

7 And then the society has to recommend
8 that this code be added to the American Medical
9 Association or the AMA. They control CPT codes.
10 And so to do that, you also have to prove that
11 you have widespread use, that this is a common
12 procedure, that it's used across the country,
13 it's not experimental, it's not only in, you
14 know, academic medical centers, if you will.
15 And so we -- within our first year after FDA
16 approval, we had well over 100 centers that had
17 purchased the equipment and were providing the
18 procedure. So that all went in together to
19 support the ACCP and the ATS societies to then
20 submit for a CPT code, which was granted, I
21 think, in 2012 or early 2013.

22 And I will say that because that CPT
23 code was accepted, that was another reason why
24 we kind of dialed up the marketing expense in
25 2013. Because with the CPT code, we felt that

1 we had the wind behind our sails a little bit
2 with coverage, and that would then start the
3 domino effect with coverage would happen, and it
4 just hasn't happened yet.

5 Q. What are you waiting for for it to
6 happen?

7 A. [REDACTED]
8 [REDACTED]
9 [REDACTED]
10 [REDACTED]
11 [REDACTED]
12 [REDACTED]
13 [REDACTED]
14 [REDACTED]
15 [REDACTED]
16 [REDACTED]
17 [REDACTED]

18 Q. So what are the normal marketing
19 channels for the Alair System?

20 A. So we market to both physicians and
21 patients, so we use a customized website as one
22 of our primary focuses. We do print, we do
23 digital, we do direct-to-patient,
24 direct-to-physician, podium presentations,
25 advertising in all the major journals, the

1 Thoracic Society and the allergy societies.
2 There's four major journals. We push to get
3 publications about the device in those journals,
4 you know, case studies, not only the data that
5 Boston Scientific has done in our clinical
6 trials, but we work with other physicians around
7 the world to encourage them to publish case
8 studies and case series about their procedures
9 and their results.

10 We've got a direct sales force in the
11 United States, so they're working directly with
12 the physicians, educating them. You know, a lot
13 of PowerPoint presentations. We have a computer
14 simulated type of training program that we use
15 for training, you know. DVDs, a lot of
16 PowerPoint presentations at the hospital level
17 with nurses. We've supported a lot of American
18 Lung Association patient events, so we'll
19 support regional small exhibits, and society
20 meetings as well.

21 (Whereupon, Opposer Exhibit Number 3,
22 Copy of marketing flyer, Bates
23 BSC000834 through 836, was marked for
24 identification.)

25 BY MR. WALZ:

1 Q. You've been handed what's been marked
2 as Deposition Exhibit Number 3.

3 A. Mm-hmm.

4 Q. Do you recognize that exhibit?

5 A. Yes. This is a flyer for a patient.

6 Q. And where would this flyer have been
7 distributed?

8 A. So this would be used -- physicians
9 could hand this out to patients in their waiting
10 rooms. If a patient was interested in being
11 treated with the Alair System, the physician
12 might offer this. This could have been used at
13 patient events. I mentioned the American Lung
14 Association, we do a lot of lung walks and
15 asthma walks. And so things -- health fairs
16 where there might be all kinds of different
17 vendors that are there for different health
18 things. We might do -- this would be handed out
19 to catch the attention of asthma sufferers. You
20 can see that "asthma attacks" was bolded, our
21 market research told us that that's what the
22 patients were going to focus on, or would catch
23 their attention.

24 Q. And what was the circulation number or
25 number of impressions that this flyer made?

1 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

2 A. You know, we probably printed, you
3 know, 100,000 of them. I wouldn't know the
4 impression number, just printing number.

5 BY MR. WALZ:

6 Q. How would you know that printing
7 number?

8 A. Based on purchase orders, what we
9 printed. So we print and then distribute them
10 to sales reps in doctors' offices. But with
11 print, it's not as easy to know exactly how many
12 people see it.

13 Q. And how do you know the effectiveness
14 of this flyer?

15 A. Based on our direct conversations with
16 physicians and their comments about the
17 information here, the fact that they, you know,
18 have asked and continue to ask for these flyers
19 to share with their patients. Our sales reps
20 through direct interaction with patients at
21 these health fairs, you know, we get continual
22 feedback of what is it that the patient is
23 really wanting to learn about.

24 So -- and clearly this is kind of an
25 initial information. Obviously there's a lot

1 more information about the procedure we want the
2 patient to learn, so we typically in all of our
3 materials for patients, we direct them to our
4 website where they can find out much more about
5 the procedure in a multimedia format.

6 Q. I guess what goes into -- what
7 planning, or what goes into creating a flyer
8 like this?

9 A. So we start with, you know, what are
10 the objectives of the piece? Who are we trying
11 to reach? Who are we trying to educate? What
12 do we want to convey to them? What is the
13 information? We look at based on the audience,
14 you know, what's enough information, what's too
15 much information.

16 [REDACTED]
17 [REDACTED]
18 [REDACTED]
19 [REDACTED]
20 [REDACTED]
21 [REDACTED]
22 [REDACTED]
23 [REDACTED]
24 [REDACTED]
25 [REDACTED]

1 Q. So you'd mentioned that this flyer
2 would have been distributed at a trade show, for
3 example?

4 A. Could have been trade shows, physician
5 trade shows, patient events, you know, large
6 health fairs. A lot of times we'll support a
7 hospital's health fair, they have a health fair
8 on a Saturday and they have vendors there at the
9 hospital, those type of events, this would be
10 used at any of those.

11 Q. So what trade shows did you -- or did
12 Boston Scientific attend, for example, in 2011?

13 A. So from 2010 until now, we attend four
14 major trade shows, I would say national trade
15 shows. The American College of Chest Physicians
16 is one, that's called CHEST; the American
17 Thoracic Society, that's the ATS; the Asthma,
18 Allergy and Immunology meeting, it's called
19 AAAAI, for A's and an I, that's the Academy
20 meeting for allergy; and then the College
21 meeting for allergy, which is ACAAI. A lot of
22 vowels.

23 So there's two major pulmonary
24 meetings and two major allergy meetings, and
25 we've exhibited at all four of those for the

1 last six years. Those are national meetings,
2 international actually, with large attendance at
3 each one.

4 And then in addition to that, we have
5 a mechanism where we submit to support regional
6 meetings. So we would support the Florida
7 Allergy Society, the Greater Cleveland Allergy
8 Society.

9 We have a grant committee, that these
10 requests come in to a grant committee and we
11 look at the agenda, we look at the audience, we
12 look at the location of the meeting, and if we
13 feel that it's a solid educational program, you
14 know, we would support through a small exhibit.
15 Those are typically one or two-day smaller
16 regional meetings, and these would be handed out
17 at those as well.

18 Q. So when you mention exhibit, are you
19 suggesting -- there's a booth?

20 A. A booth, yes. So we probably do
21 40-plus smaller booths, you know, where there's
22 a salesperson, a Boston Scientific display, and
23 they're handing out these kind of brochures. We
24 probably do between 40 and 60 of those a year,
25 smaller ones.

1 Q. With respect to the national trade
2 shows, you mentioned there's a large attendance.
3 What do you mean by "large attendance"?

4 A. So the ATS and the CHEST meetings all
5 are about 15 -- 10 to 15,000 in attendance from
6 around the world. It depends on where the
7 meeting is held. Attendance goes up and down,
8 San Diego is a big draw, Denver not so big.

9 And then the allergy meetings, the
10 AAAAI and the ACAAI, draw about 5 to 6,000
11 physicians, nurses, and respiratory therapists.

12 (Whereupon, Opposer Exhibit Number 4,
13 Patient brochures titled A New
14 Procedure for Severe Asthma, Bates
15 BSC000558 through 700, was marked for
16 identification.)

17 BY MR. WALZ:

18 Q. So you've been handed what's been
19 marked as Deposition Exhibit Number 4.

20 A. Uh-huh.

21 Q. Do you recognize that exhibit?

22 A. I do. This is our patient brochure.

23 Q. And again, what's the approximate
24 circulation of, or impressions made by this
25 brochure?

1 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

2 Calls for speculation.

3 A. So the patient brochure -- so there's
4 a few pieces here. So the patient brochure is
5 like the first like 11 pages.

6 So this is a patient brochure that we
7 developed at launch, so it was available to
8 patients when we commercialized. This is the
9 patient brochure that we give to physicians to
10 hand to patients to explain the procedure.
11 Through our website, if the patient wants more
12 information, they would get this directly in the
13 mail. This was done in conjunction with FDA,
14 they approved this language, so it was an
15 FDA-approved piece.

16 And since that time we've also created
17 a second piece that's just slightly shorter and
18 a little more concise. We found that this was
19 almost too confusing or too much information for
20 the patient, so we have a patient brochure as
21 well as a patient pamphlet that conveys the core
22 information. And we probably -- I know we've
23 printed over 300,000 of these brochures since
24 launch.

25 Again, they're given to the physician

1 offices, they're used at trade shows, they're
2 used at these patient events. So it is our
3 primary single thing that we use to educate
4 patients, and always focused to drive them back
5 to the website where they can get more
6 information, they can log in and opt in to
7 continue to receive more information.

8 Q. And you had mentioned there are about
9 300,000 of these that were printed you said?

10 A. The patient pamphlet and the patient
11 brochure combined, the same two pieces, overall
12 have been about 300,000.

13 Q. And how do you know that?

14 A. Based on purchase orders and what
15 we've spent.

16 Q. And what has been the geographic reach
17 of this particular brochure?

18 A. This particular brochure is worldwide,
19 so it's used in -- you know, throughout the
20 United States, we have over 350 centers today in
21 the United States, we have another 100 centers
22 outside the United States. This same brochure
23 is used worldwide. We just translate it. But
24 in Japan, China, Brazil, they're using the same
25 exact brochure, but just translated.

1 Q. And for how many years has that
2 brochure been used?

3 A. We've used this continually since we
4 launched it in 2010.

5 I will say there was another version
6 of this that had a picture of the -- it was
7 actually branded for the AIR2 trial, so we used
8 a very similar patient brochure to educate the
9 patient on the procedure throughout our clinical
10 study. And so the difference of that one was we
11 had no results. So we were saying this is what
12 the procedure will do, this is how it works,
13 this is what your doctor is going to do, this is
14 what you're going to do, but we didn't have any
15 safety or efficacy data at that time. As soon
16 as FDA approval and the trial was completed,
17 then we were able to add results.

18 (Whereupon, Opposer Exhibit Number 5,
19 Screen shots from Bronchial
20 Thermoplasty website, Bates BSC000797,
21 812 and 813, was marked for
22 identification.)

23 BY MR. WALZ:

24 Q. Now you've been handed deposition
25 that's been marked Exhibit Number 5. Do you

1 recognize that exhibit?

2 A. Yes, this is screen shots from our
3 website.

4 Q. What is the screen shot of?

5 A. So this is a portion of the website
6 for patients, and it's basically -- on the
7 website they would have clicked that they want
8 more information, so there's support for
9 patients or physician information. So if a
10 patient entered their information, they're
11 basically opting into our website database, and
12 we would send them a DVD about the procedure, so
13 it had animation, physician interview, patient
14 interviews. So it was a multimedia way to
15 educate patients.

16 Q. So when you refer to "it," you're
17 referring to the DVD?

18 A. The DVD. If they clicked on this
19 portion, they would get that patient DVD.

20 A lot of the information on the DVD is
21 within the website itself, but sometimes people
22 just want to have a DVD to review and don't want
23 to just look at it only on-line.

24 Q. Now, how many DVDs have you
25 distributed?

1 A. Well over 40,000.

2 Q. How do you know that?

3 A. Purchase orders.

4 Q. And what was the geographic reach of
5 the DVD?

6 A. So again, that is across the United
7 States, as well as globally. Our global
8 partners in Europe, Asia, Latin America,
9 Australia all have this same DVD. The same DVD
10 is used in Australia and the UK directly. And
11 our partners would have either translated or
12 they dubbed, subtitled them to be in China. So
13 they're still using the same DVD today around
14 the world.

15 Q. You mentioned earlier that Boston
16 Scientific made a television advertisement?

17 A. We did. We did the first TV ad, we
18 found out, that Boston Scientific had ever done.
19 We used patient testimonials, actual patients,
20 those patients' videos appear on our website,
21 and we used those video assets to create a very
22 compelling, emotional, very strong TV
23 commercial.

24 Q. And how many TV commercials has Boston
25 Scientific produced?

1 A. We have produced the one for the Alair
2 System, and that is the only one I'm aware of
3 that Boston Scientific has released. There may
4 be a second one that the neuromodulation group
5 might have come out in the last year.

6 Q. What other marketing channels did the
7 television ad lead to?

8 A. So we tested the TV commercial. It
9 was a pilot in small markets, because media is
10 very expensive, so we tested it, and we found
11 that the call to action or the -- you know, with
12 the phone number or the website on the TV
13 commercial drove much more website traffic in
14 that market than other markets where we were
15 piloting different programs. So we saw that the
16 television commercial definitely worked to drive
17 more traffic. It was an expensive way to work.
18 And it's also challenging, because unlike, you
19 know, selling cars or tires, our market is very
20 narrow, and so it's expensive to do television
21 because you don't get to target to the asthma
22 population.

23 So what we found was if we could use
24 the emotional benefits of that TV commercial in
25 a more targeted way, like if you could do a TV

1 commercial and only send it to asthma patients,
2 that would be ideal.

3 So what we did was used that video,
4 portions of that video, and did what we call
5 rich media ads, and so they're digital
6 advertising or banner ads that could be directed
7 to sites where asthma patients would go to, like
8 about asthma, or allergy websites, or different
9 websites that we know that asthma patients tend
10 to go to, and they'd see a banner ad, and when
11 the mouse flicks over the banner ad, the video
12 would start. And so the patient would get the
13 benefit of the positive expense of the TV
14 commercial and the much less expense for us.

15 (Whereupon, Opposer Exhibit Number 6,
16 Bronchial Thermoplasty website pages,
17 Bates BSC000814 through 821, was
18 marked for identification.)

19 BY MR. WALZ:

20 Q. You've been handed what's been marked
21 Deposition Exhibit Number 6.

22 A. Yep.

23 Q. Do you recognize that exhibit?

24 A. I do.

25 Q. And how do you recognize it?

1 A. So it's more of the btforasthma
2 website for the Alair System. This is focused
3 on the patient pages, or the patient portion of
4 the website. [REDACTED]

5 [REDACTED]

6 [REDACTED]

7 [REDACTED]

8 [REDACTED]

9 [REDACTED]

10 [REDACTED]

11 And so we wanted to find a way to
12 point out to patients that their life could be
13 better. And so one way that we found is using a
14 validated survey, it's called the Asthma Impact
15 Survey, or the AIS-6, and this is -- this was
16 created by allergists and pulmonologists and
17 tested thoroughly and validated. So a very
18 simple few questions that a patient answers, and
19 based on their score it tells them how asthma
20 impacts their life.

21 And so they may say their asthma is
22 under control because they're taking medication,
23 and they don't have attacks, but they never
24 leave the couch, and they can't go to the park,
25 and they can't do anything with their children.

1 And so this was a way to try to engage a patient
2 to better understand their impact, the asthma
3 impact of their life.

4 And so we put this on our website. We
5 paid to a third-party company that owns the
6 rights to this survey. And it's been very
7 successful, because the patients who have taken
8 this -- and we watched this, we can see it all
9 digitally, we don't know by patients, we don't
10 keep patient information, but we know patient
11 numbers who have taken it, and over 75 percent
12 of the people taking this impact survey have
13 scored in the severe impact level.

14 So we feel very strongly that the
15 patients that are coming to our website and
16 reading this information and then taking this
17 survey, asthma is impacting their life
18 significantly.

19 And from this, they're able to
20 actually print the results so that they have
21 something to then bring in to their doctor and
22 say, hey, I think asthma is really -- you know,
23 my asthma is worse than I thought. And so the
24 whole idea is to start the dialogue with their
25 physician.

1 Q. What does that printout look like?

2 A. When you take the test and you hit
3 "print," it literally prints a letter, and it
4 has a beginning that says, you know, "Dear
5 Doctor" -- you know, basically it kinds of leads
6 into "asthma may be impacting my life more than
7 I realize, and I'd like to talk with you about a
8 new treatment for asthma."

9 Q. And what is that new treatment?

10 A. Bronchial thermoplasty delivered by
11 the Alair System. I think the letter also has a
12 couple key things about safety and efficacy
13 about the Alair System in the head of the
14 letter.

15 Again, because this patient may be
16 taking this to their primary care physician who
17 have not heard of the Alair System before, is
18 not aware of a device for asthma, so this is one
19 way to -- we like to educate the patient
20 first -- or the physician first, and then when
21 the patient goes to the physician the physician
22 already knows about it, that's ideal, but it's
23 very difficult to reach, you know, 100,000
24 primary care physicians. So this is one way to
25 engage the patient more. So that's one.

1 The other is once they learn that
2 asthma might really be impacting their life more
3 than they thought, the next key thing is who is
4 doing this in my area, who can I go talk to. So
5 we have an interactive map on the website, and
6 they can go and now pick by country, the 30
7 different countries, and they can click a
8 country or state, and go and immediately pull up
9 all of the physicians in their area that are
10 offering this. So it gives the patient, if they
11 don't already have a physician that they want to
12 go talk to, it gives them other ideas of
13 physicians who are doing the procedure, so
14 that's -- the last page of this is the map,
15 that's -- we call it the physician locator.

16 (Fire alarm interruption.)

17 BY MR. WALZ:

18 Q. So taking a look then at Exhibit 6,
19 you talked about the success of the testing, but
20 what are the quick statistics for this
21 particular website, or web page?

22 MR. HANSEN: Objection. Calls for
23 speculation.

24 A. So our web analytics from 2014, is the
25 one that I remember most recently, was over

1 300,000 visitors to the website in 2014. We
2 continue to monitor that every month. The data
3 has been very consistent. Patients spend about
4 a minute and a half on the website. We find
5 that they go to how it works, and then find a
6 clinic, are some of the most commonplaces where
7 they go. We've got a wealth of data as far as
8 how people flow through the website.

9 (Fire alarm interruption.)

10 (Whereupon, the reporter read back the
11 above answer.)

12 BY MR. WALZ:

13 Q. Is there anything else you want to add
14 to that before the buzzer went off?

15 A. No. I think the other pages you have
16 here is the patient stories. We find that
17 patients would often go to listen to what
18 another patient -- a direct testimonial from
19 patients, so that's another very popular place
20 on the website for patients to learn how did
21 other patients react to the procedure.

22 Q. And what has been the geographic reach
23 of the website?

24 A. So it's global. Btforasthma is
25 available around the world. We started with

1 focus in the United States. Again, we're in
2 almost every state in the country as far as a
3 clinic, this reaches clearly all 50 states. And
4 then now it's international, so we've added --
5 this map now is no longer a U.S. map, it's a
6 global map, and we've added a pull-down map by
7 country, so there's over 30 countries that you
8 could find a clinic.

9 And so this website will also soon be
10 duplicated in multiple languages, so Spanish
11 will be up very shortly to reach the
12 Spanish-speaking population in the United
13 States, as well as in Latin America and Europe,
14 and then we'll also have Japanese, Chinese,
15 Portuguese, French, Italian. So the exact same
16 website will be duplicated in multiple
17 languages.

18 Q. How many Spanish-speaking patients do
19 you have, or customers do you have that request
20 the Alair System?

21 A. I don't know numbers of
22 Spanish-speaking patients. We have had requests
23 since before FDA approval for the patient
24 brochure in Spanish, and we do print that
25 patient brochure in Spanish now. We've probably

1 printed 25,000 or more Spanish language
2 brochures. But I think having the website in
3 Spanish clearly will reach much more -- many
4 more patients. We do have -- one of our patient
5 testimonials also is up in Spanish.

6 (Whereupon, Opposer Exhibit Number 7,
7 Printout of Bronchial Thermoplasty
8 website pages, Bates BSC000825 through
9 833, was marked for identification.)

10 BY MR. WALZ:

11 Q. So now you've been handed what's been
12 marked as Deposition Exhibit Number 7.

13 A. Mm-hmm.

14 Q. Do you recognize it?

15 A. I do. This is the physician portion
16 of our website.

17 Q. And on the click statistics for this
18 page as well, what are those statistics?

19 A. The how it works is still very key.
20 Physicians want to know, you know, what is this
21 about. We say it's for physicians. It's
22 primarily for the referring physician. The
23 physician who is treating or is interested in
24 doing the procedure itself -- I always use my
25 hands as a bronchoscope -- they've already

1 learned about the procedure from a sales rep
2 most likely, or a peer-to-peer presentation, so
3 this portion of it is really designed for the
4 referring physician, the allergist and the
5 primary care physician, to learn about the
6 procedure so they can instruct the patients if
7 this would be appropriate.

8 (Fire alarm interruption.)

9 A. So this is for physicians to really
10 understand the procedure and the device, and to
11 start to kind of uncover with the physician that
12 their patients might have an option that they
13 hadn't considered before.

14 BY MR. WALZ:

15 Q. And the click statistics for the
16 patient portion of the website versus the
17 physician portion of the website, do they
18 differ?

19 A. I don't recall. And then this -- I
20 will say that the last couple pages, this was a
21 page that was added in 2013, and we had a logo
22 for the five-year data, so this was a big push
23 to get to the physicians to understand the
24 five-year data. I believe we had a link
25 directly to the publication. So that's when we

1 started to do a much bigger push through journal
2 advertising to drive patients -- or to drive
3 physicians, actually, to this portion of the
4 website.

5 Q. So what press has the Alair System
6 received?

7 A. We have had great press since actually
8 before FDA approval. We've appeared on Good
9 Morning America, the CBS Morning Show, Wall
10 Street Journal, San Francisco Chronicle, New
11 York Times. So again with the compelling
12 patient story, that's really what we have used
13 to try to get good press, so the stories always
14 revolved around the patients, the revolutionary
15 new procedure with the Alair system, and rarely
16 did it actually mention the company name. It
17 was a focus on the device and the patient.

18 Q. So did you mention -- you mentioned
19 the Wall Street Journal. Did you mention the
20 CBS --

21 A. CBS Morning Show, we had like a
22 five-minute piece that was a patient interview,
23 physician interview, and then there was a
24 question and answer with the CBS resident
25 physician and the anchor, and basically went

1 back and forth discussing the benefits of this
2 new procedure, the Alair System.

3 Q. And when was that segment --

4 A. That was in --

5 Q. -- when it aired?

6 A. -- 2012, I believe. It's on our
7 website. So a lot of those pieces of press, you
8 know, newspaper articles, we've been on NPR, a
9 great two-minute story on NPR, a lot of those we
10 get approved by our legal and regulatory system,
11 and then we can add them to the website.

12 In addition to that, we monitor
13 different media hits, we'll call them, for the
14 Alair System either on social media, on blogs,
15 on TV, radio, newspaper, local newspapers. We
16 have a search going on that every month, and I
17 think in 2014 we had over 400 and -- over 400
18 different things appeared in the media about the
19 Alair System and bronchial thermoplasty.

20 Q. So what is a media hit, can you
21 describe that?

22 A. It could be an on-line blog, a TV
23 news, the Channel 5 news in Boston would have a
24 couple minute story about a local patient and a
25 physician. When a new center gets started in

1 town, or the first center in a state, that was
2 newsworthy often, so we'd get good coverage. We
3 work with the local hospitals and their
4 marketing departments to help get things placed.
5 Newspaper articles, blogs, Twitter, Facebook, a
6 lot of social media posts on the Alair System as
7 well.

8 So some of those get put on our
9 website. Many of those we can't get on our
10 website because patients actually claim that
11 they -- their results are so good that our data
12 is actually not supportive of their results
13 because they're so good. So we have a lot of
14 great stories out there, but that are not
15 necessarily all on our website.

16 Q. Okay. What sponsorships has Boston
17 Scientific engaged in for the Alair System?

18 A. So we have sponsored a number of
19 different -- with the professional societies we
20 have sponsored, you know, trade shows and
21 exhibits is one.

22 We've sponsored lunchtime symposia,
23 product theaters, where they're sponsored by
24 Boston Scientific and we pay to have a physician
25 speaker at a trade show.

1 We've sponsored things through
2 advocacy organizations, the Asthma and Allergy
3 Foundation of America, or AAFA, is a very large
4 patient advocacy group in the United States,
5 they publish every year the asthma capital's
6 report, and for two years we were the exclusive
7 sponsor of that report. That generates a ton of
8 press around the country. It comes out on World
9 Asthma Day in May, May -- the first Tuesday in
10 May, and so we've supported that organization.

11 We've also supported the Asthma and
12 Allergy Network, or AAN, another large patient
13 advocacy group. They're very active in Capitol
14 Hill. And we've supported that group as well
15 for patient education, and working with both
16 those organizations to improve patient access to
17 the Alair System, and which is basically working
18 through the insurance companies and getting
19 insurance companies to cover the procedure.

20 And also the ALA, I think I mentioned
21 that before, but we've sponsored probably over
22 50 different ALA activities around the country
23 over the last few years, so those are ALA asthma
24 walks, air climbs, different local events that
25 the local ALA chapter will submit for

1 sponsorship to Boston Scientific.

2 [REDACTED]

3 [REDACTED]

4 [REDACTED]

5 [REDACTED]

6 [REDACTED]

7 [REDACTED]

8 [REDACTED]

9 [REDACTED]

10 [REDACTED]

11 [REDACTED]

12 [REDACTED]

13 [REDACTED]

14 [REDACTED]

15 [REDACTED]

16 [REDACTED]

17 [REDACTED]

18 [REDACTED]

19 [REDACTED]

20 [REDACTED]

21 [REDACTED]

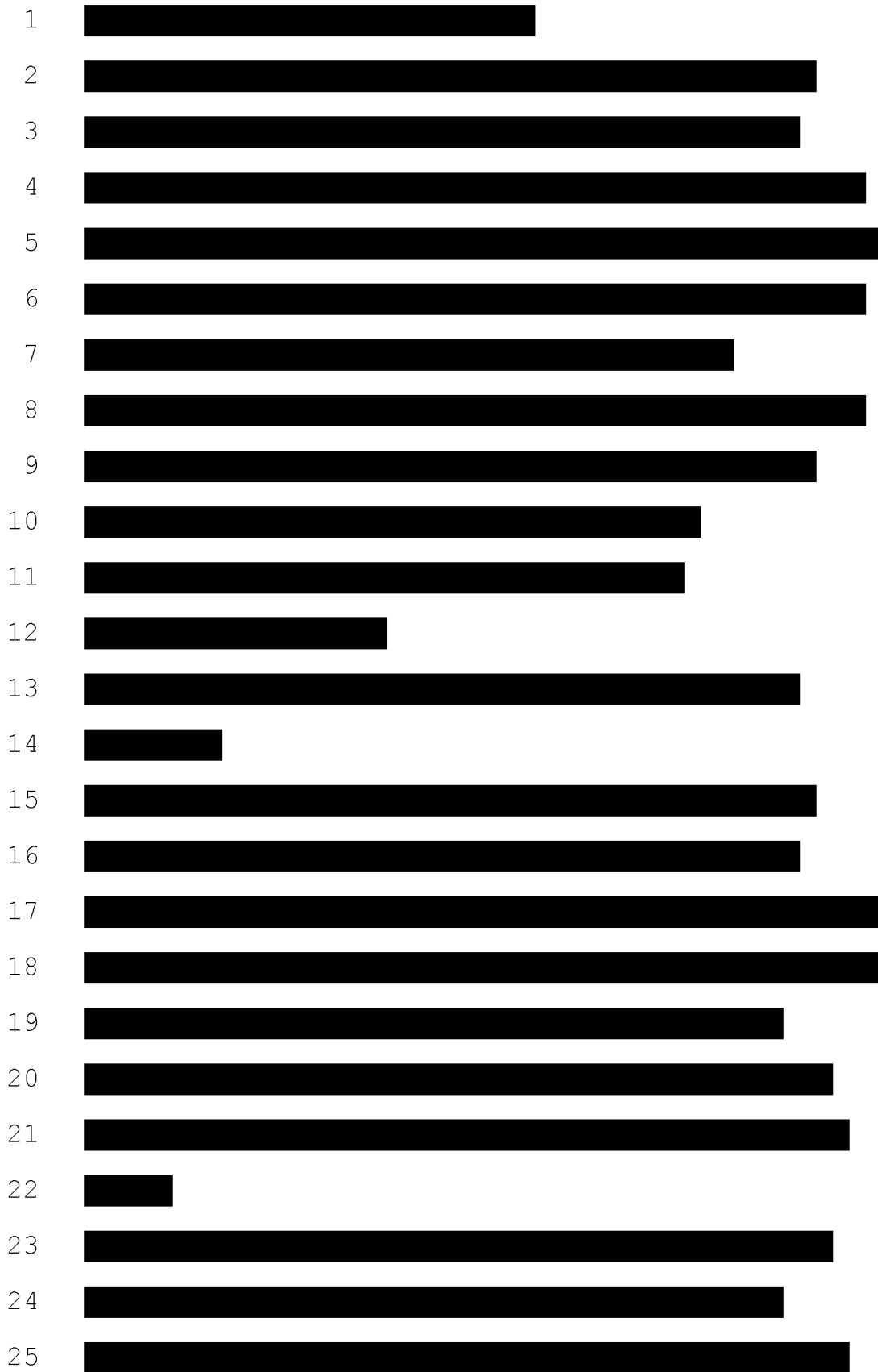
22 [REDACTED]

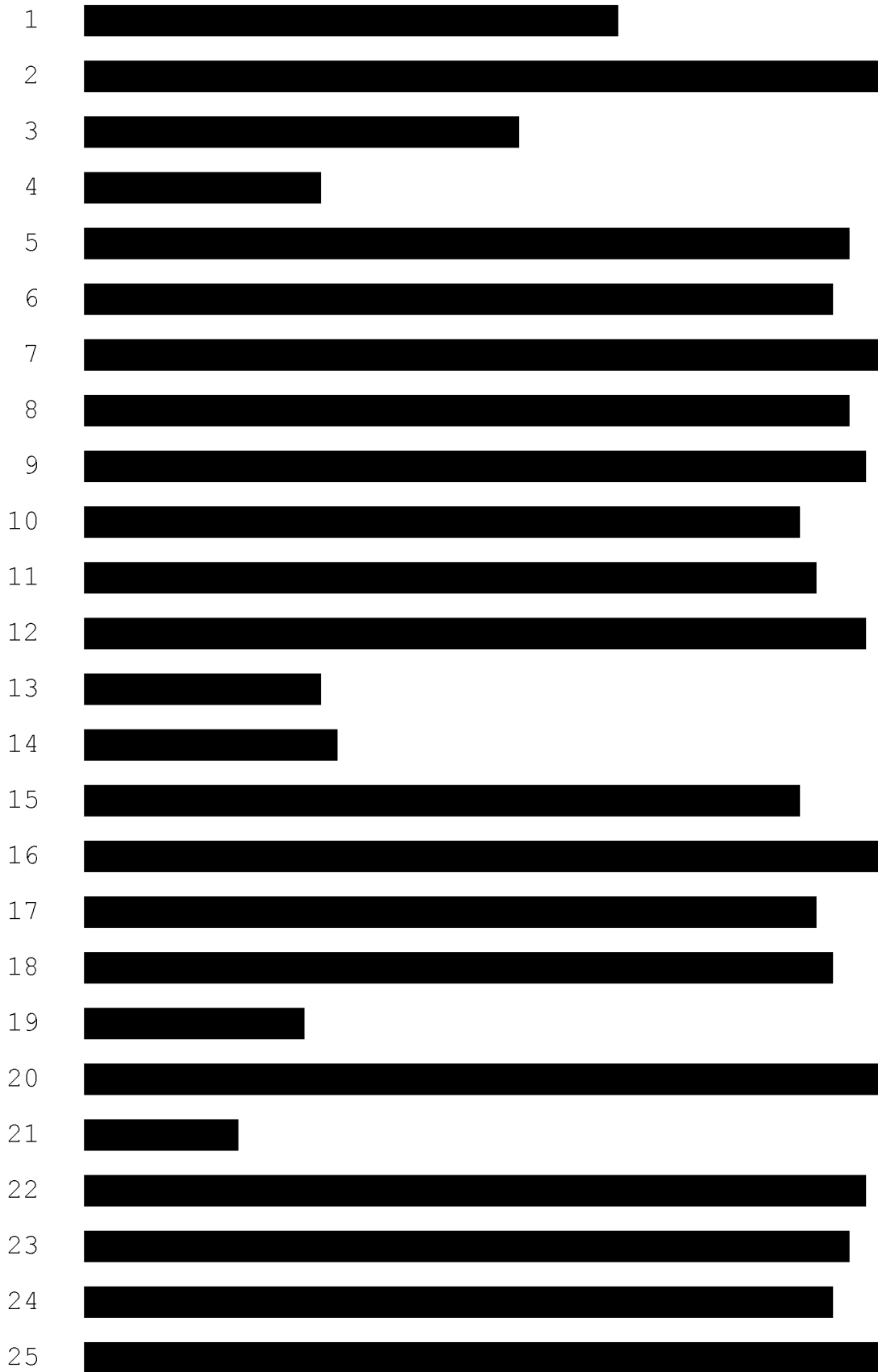
23 [REDACTED]

24 [REDACTED]

25 [REDACTED]







1 [REDACTED]
2 [REDACTED]
3 [REDACTED]
4 [REDACTED]
5 [REDACTED]
6 [REDACTED]
7 [REDACTED]
8 [REDACTED]
9 [REDACTED]
10 [REDACTED]
11 [REDACTED]
12 [REDACTED]

13 BY MR. WALZ:

14 Q. Okay. I just want to make sure we're
15 clear. I know we talked about this in the
16 beginning, but in 2014, what consumer class were
17 you targeting with the marketing expenses in
18 2014?

19 A. So in 2014, we're clearly going after
20 the referring physician as well as the patient.

21 Q. Okay.

22 A. So it's all, you know, consumers, if
23 you will, physicians, treating, referring, and
24 patients.

25 Q. Okay.

1 MR. WALZ: I have no further
2 questions.

3 MR. HANSEN: Shall we take a break,
4 switch it up?

5 (Whereupon, a recess was taken from
6 10:13 a.m. to 10:21 a.m.)

7 CROSS EXAMINATION

8 BY MR. HANSEN:

9 Q. Ms. Passafaro, we met earlier, my name
10 is Dennis Hansen, I represent Holaira in this
11 matter.

12 A. Okay. Where are you based?

13 Q. I'm based in Minneapolis.

14 You understand that although we're not
15 in a courtroom today, the testimony you're
16 giving is under oath just as if you were in a
17 court?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Okay. I'm going to hand you what's
20 been marked as Applicant's Exhibit 1.

21 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
22 1, Copy of trademark search, Bates
23 BSC000119 through 453, was marked for
24 identification.)

25 BY MR. HANSEN:

1 Q. Which is a copy of trademark search
2 for the mark Alair performed in July of 2002 for
3 the Fenwick & West firm in Palo Alto,
4 California.

5 Do you see that?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. This was produced by Boston Scientific
8 in this case at BSC-119 through 453.

9 Have you seen this document before?

10 A. I have not.

11 Q. Okay. And you were not at Asthmatx --

12 A. No.

13 Q. -- at the time, correct?

14 A. I was not.

15 Q. You joined Asthmatx in 2005?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. And in 2005, you joined as
18 vice-president of marketing?

19 A. Vice-president of marketing.

20 Q. One of the kind of ground rules for a
21 deposition is try not to talk over me, and I'll
22 try not to talk over you. It makes it
23 impossible for her to do her job.

24 And so in 2005 you joined Asthmatx as
25 the vice-president of marketing?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And you testified earlier today that
3 you have some awareness about the process that
4 Asthmatx went through when deciding to obtain a
5 trademark on the Alair name, correct?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. And one of the things you mentioned
8 that was done was a trademark search, correct?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And this is one of those trademark
11 searches that was performed, correct?

12 A. I believe so.

13 Q. Okay. If you would, turn with me to
14 Bates number BSC-163 in this document. The
15 Bates numbers are these little --

16 A. Bottom right.

17 Q. -- bottom right numbers, correct.

18 A. 163?

19 Q. Yes, please.

20 On Page 163, there's a published
21 trademark -- or a mark published for opposition
22 at the time for Altair, an International
23 Class 10, U.S. Class 26, 39 and 44.

24 Do you see that?

25 A. Mm-hmm.

1 Q. Do you know whether Asthmatx took any
2 action related to this mark, this Altair mark
3 when it decided to proceed with getting -- or
4 attempting to get a trademark for Alair?

5 A. I was not at the company at that time.

6 Q. So nothing was done that you're aware
7 of, correct?

8 A. Nothing that I was aware of in 2002.

9 Q. And nothing that you became aware of
10 in 2005, correct?

11 A. In 2005?

12 Q. Right.

13 When you joined the company in 2005 --

14 A. I was not aware of anything, no.

15 Q. As you sit here today, you're not
16 aware of anything?

17 A. I was aware of something with Altair
18 after 2005.

19 Q. What are you were you aware of with
20 respect to Altair after 2005?

21 A. The name had come up before FDA
22 approval, around FDA approval, and I was asked
23 about this name, and was not aware of an actual
24 product that it represented, had not seen
25 anything commercially with that name, was not

1 familiar with that product, with anything to do
2 with pulmonology, asthma, allergy. It was a
3 name that we were not aware of, or did not see
4 represented in the marketplace.

5 Q. Okay. And so when did you become
6 aware of it, do you remember?

7 A. Maybe 2009. There would have been --
8 I believe there would have been documents with
9 our legal person who dealt with this. I was
10 just consulted about the commercial viability or
11 entity of Altair, what did I know about it
12 commercially or competitively.

13 Q. In 2009, that was prior to the Boston
14 Scientific acquisition?

15 A. Correct. This was -- I became aware
16 of it at Asthmatx.

17 Q. Okay. And as far as you know,
18 Asthmatx took no action with respect to the
19 Altair mark?

20 MR. WALZ: Object as vague.

21 A. I'm not -- I don't believe we took --
22 I don't know what we did. I don't recall.

23 BY MR. HANSEN:

24 Q. Okay. Did --

25 A. Our legal people would have done that.

1 I was not involved.

2 Q. To the extent that there are records
3 that reflect any action taken by the legal team
4 with respect to the Altair name, you would
5 expect that -- for example, if they sent a
6 letter to Altair, you would expect those
7 documents to exist, correct?

8 A. I would not be able to answer that,
9 not being a part of the legal team.

10 Q. Okay. You don't know whether they
11 preserve their records?

12 A. I do not know.

13 Q. Okay. Let's turn to BSC-180, please.

14 A. Mine is missing.

15 Q. Is that right?

16 A. Oh, it's back, it's double-sided.

17 Q. Sorry, it is a double-sided document.

18 A. The top half or bottom half?

19 Q. The bottom half referring to the Flair
20 mark for International Class 10, U.S. Class 26,
21 39, 44 for "Medical Device; namely, a
22 nebulizer."

23 Do you see that?

24 A. Mm-hmm.

25 Q. Do you know if Asthmatx took any

1 action with respect to the Flair mark?

2 MR. WALZ: Objection. It's hearsay.

3 A. I don't know.

4 BY MR. HANSEN:

5 Q. Do you know whether Boston Scientific
6 took any action with respect to the Flair mark?

7 A. I don't know.

8 Q. Okay. Both the Altair mark and the
9 Flair mark contain the three letters in
10 sequential order A-I-R, correct?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Let's turn to BSC-184. BSC-184 has
13 the mark Maxil-Air on it.

14 Do you see that?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. And that's for a sinus ventilation
17 tube, correct?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And that has the sequential letters
20 A-I-R, correct?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. Turn the page to 186. There's an
23 entry here for Vitalaire.

24 Do you see that?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. And that's "Medical Apparatus.
2 Namely, oxygen concentrators for reducing air to
3 a concentrated form of oxygen at home."

4 Do you see that?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And that also has the three letters in
7 sequential order A-I-R?

8 A. Correct.

9 MR. WALZ: Objection. Vague.

10 BY MR. HANSEN:

11 Q. Well, in the word itself, Vitalaire --
12 do you see that -- there's the three letters
13 A-I-R?

14 A. That's part of the word, yes.

15 Q. Correct. Okay.

16 If you turn the page to 187, there's
17 Ventilair, which is a medical air compressor for
18 respiratory therapy.

19 Do you see that?

20 A. Mm-hmm.

21 Q. And that also has the three letters in
22 the name A-I-R, correct?

23 A. Correct.

24 Q. If you turn to 189, there is
25 Circulaire, which is a "Medical Apparatus,

1 namely, aerosol products comprising delivery
2 tubes, nebulizers, and reservoir bags for use in
3 delivering pharmaceutical preparations in the
4 form of inhalants."

5 Do you see that?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And that also contains A-I-R?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. Let's turn to BSC-192. There's a mark
10 here identified as Halayr.

11 Do you see that?

12 A. Mm-hmm.

13 Q. Are you familiar with that mark?

14 A. No.

15 Q. Are you aware that Novartis filed in
16 2013 for the Halayr mark for inhalers for
17 medical purposes, medical apparatus for treating
18 respiratory conditions?

19 MR. WALZ: Objection. Hearsay.

20 A. No.

21 BY MR. HANSEN:

22 Q. Are you aware that the United States
23 Patent & Trademark Office published that mark
24 for opposition on May 6, 2014?

25 A. No.

1 Q. Do you know whether Boston Scientific
2 has taken any action with respect to the Halayr
3 mark?

4 MR. WALZ: Objection. Vague.

5 A. No.

6 BY MR. HANSEN:

7 Q. And when I say "action," I mean any
8 legal action.

9 A. I would not know.

10 Q. Okay. If we go to BSC-195, there is
11 Cyclair, which is "Inhalers for administrating
12 medications for use as an immunosuppressant,
13 sold together as a unit with the medications."

14 Do you see that?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. And that also has the three letters in
17 sequential order A-I-R?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. The next page, 196, has the mark
20 Zolair, which is "Pharmaceutical preparations in
21 the treatment of rhinitis."

22 Do you see that?

23 A. Mm-hmm. Yes.

24 Q. And that also has the three letters in
25 sequential order A I -- Air, I'm sorry -- A-I-R?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Thank you.

3 The next page, 197, reflects the mark
4 Eulair, E-U-L-A-I-R?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And that is for "Pharmaceutical
7 preparations for the treatment of respiratory
8 diseases," correct?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And it also contains A-I-R in
11 sequential order?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. The next page, 198, has a mark Zolayr.
14 Do you see that?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Which is for "Pharmaceutical
17 preparations for the treatment of respiratory
18 diseases, cardiovascular disorders, central
19 nervous systems disorders, and for oncology and
20 for use as an immunosuppressant"?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Broad?

23 A. Slightly.

24 Q. Okay. This doesn't contain the
25 letters A-I-R, right?

1 A. No, it doesn't.

2 Q. But phonetically if you sound it out
3 it's Zolayr as if -- phonetically it's the same
4 as having A-I-R, correct?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. If you go to Page 201, there's a mark
7 Xolayr?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. Did I pronounce that correctly?

10 A. I believe so.

11 Q. Is that a trade name you're familiar
12 with?

13 A. This trade name, no.

14 Q. Okay. This is for "Pharmaceutical
15 preparation for the treatment of allergic
16 rhinitis and asthma."

17 Do you see that?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Is rhinitis related to asthma?

20 A. No. Rhinitis is a problem with
21 allergies in the nasal area. Asthma can be
22 allergic, but it's separate from rhinitis.

23 Q. And this, like the last one we looked
24 at, ends in A-Y-R, correct?

25 A. Correct.

1 Q. Which is phonetically equivalent to
2 A-I-R?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. The next page, 202, is Singulair which
5 is "Pharmaceutical preparations for the
6 treatment of respiratory disorders."

7 Do you see that?

8 A. Correct.

9 Q. You're familiar with Singulair,
10 correct?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Does Singulair treat asthma?

13 A. Not intended to, but it is used for
14 asthma.

15 Q. Okay. And this ends in A-I-R,
16 correct?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. If you go to Page 236, there is
19 Optimair.

20 Do you see that?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. "Respirators other than for artificial
23 respiration."

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Correct?

1 This also ends in A-I-R, correct?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. If we go to Page 248, there is
4 Vitalaire.

5 Are you on the same page as me?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. "Medical equipment rental services,
8 namely, respirators, oxygen suppliers,
9 ventilators, nebulizers and related breathing
10 apparatus, therapy services, and retail
11 respirators, oxygen suppliers, ventilators,
12 nebulizers and related breathing apparatus store
13 services."

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And that also has A-I-R in it?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Would you agree with me that it's
18 common to have the letters A-I-R or a phonetic
19 equivalent in the trade name or trademark for a
20 product or service that's designed to treat the
21 respiratory pathways?

22 A. As you stated it, no. I see these
23 product names as dealing with respirators,
24 nebulizers, compressed air, not necessarily
25 single use medical devices used in the

1 respiratory tract, or the respiratory airway.

2 So I think these are -- they're slightly -- use
3 of the word air with a respirator is different
4 than what our product is, I believe.

5 Q. Sure.

6 I understand that therapeutically it's
7 a different treatment, but all of these products
8 are dealing with breathing, correct?

9 MR. WALZ: Objection. Speculation.

10 A. I would say no.

11 BY MR. HANSEN:

12 Q. Okay.

13 A. Just the liquid air, a nebulizer,
14 they're dealing with different pieces of medical
15 equipment. A ventilator, nebulizer,
16 respiratory, they're dealing with different
17 areas, so I wouldn't classify all of them as
18 being -- dealing with the respiratory airway
19 necessarily.

20 Q. Okay. And it's your testimony that it
21 isn't common for the letters A-I-R or a phonetic
22 equivalent to appear in the trade name or
23 product name for products treating respiratory
24 conditions?

25 MR. WALZ: Objection. Foundation.

1 A. I think air is used in different
2 trademarks, whether it's respiratory or
3 pharmaceutical or device, it's used in different
4 areas different ways.

5 BY MR. HANSEN:

6 Q. And you would agree with me that it's
7 certainly not uncommon for products or services
8 dealing with respiration for A-I-R to be
9 included as part of the name?

10 MR. WALZ: Objection. Foundation.

11 A. I would agree.

12 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
13 2, Petition for Cancellation, Bates
14 BSC000735 through 739, was marked for
15 identification.)

16 BY MR. HANSEN:

17 Q. You've been handed what's been marked
18 as Applicant's Exhibit 2, which is a Petition
19 for Cancellation, the Petitioner being Alere
20 Medical Incorporated, the Respondent being
21 Asthmatx, Incorporated. It was produced by
22 Boston Scientific in this case at BSC-735
23 through 739.

24 Have you seen this document before?

25 A. I have not.

1 Q. This was not something you were
2 involved in?

3 A. I was not.

4 Q. Okay. Do you recall that Alere sought
5 to cancel the Alair mark?

6 A. I was aware of the trademark Alere. I
7 was not aware of the actual action of a
8 cancellation, that I was not familiar with. I
9 was not involved in the legal action.

10 Q. Okay. And if you turn to Page 3 --
11 well, actually let's -- this will just be more
12 expeditious if I mark another exhibit.

13 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
14 3, Answer, Bates BSC000728 through
15 731, was marked for identification.)

16 BY MR. HANSEN:

17 Q. Applicant's Exhibit 3, just to
18 identify it for the record, is the Answer by
19 Asthmatx, Incorporated, the Respondent in the
20 cancellation proceeding initiated through the
21 petition identified in Exhibit 2. The Exhibit 3
22 was produced by Boston Scientific as BSC-728
23 through 731.

24 A. So this is -- Exhibit 3 is an answer
25 to the activities of Exhibit 2?

1 Q. Correct.

2 A. Okay.

3 Q. And I understand you're not a lawyer,
4 but I just have a couple basic questions
5 regarding this.

6 So if you look at Exhibit 2,
7 Paragraph 9, Alere Medical alleged that "The
8 ALAIR mark that is the subject of Registration
9 Nos. 2856168 and 3380080 is confusingly similar
10 to Petitioner's mark ALAIR."

11 Do you see that?

12 A. Is that a typo? Because it says the
13 Alair mark is similar to the Alair.

14 Q. Yes. I believe it is a typo, because
15 they can't allege that Alair is confusingly
16 similar to Alair, obviously.

17 A. But one of those is spelled wrong?

18 Q. Correct.

19 So Petitioner's mark would be the
20 Alere mark.

21 A. So the second word in Alair at the end
22 of the sentence should be A-L-E-R-E?

23 Q. Correct. I didn't draft it.

24 A. So I've never seen this before.

25 Q. And let's look at Paragraph 11 as

1 well, which says "Respondent's use of the mark
2 ALAIR" --

3 A. That's the appropriate use of Alere
4 word there?

5 Q. Correct.

6 "Respondent's use of the mark ALAIR
7 for the goods and services identified" -- well,
8 let me just --

9 A. Here it's Petitioner's corrected it?

10 Q. Asthmatx is the owner of the Alair
11 mark at this time, correct?

12 A. Right.

13 Q. And Alair is identified as the
14 Respondent, correct?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. So when they refer to Respondent's
17 mark, safe to assume that they're referring to
18 the Alair mark; and when they're referring to
19 petitioner's mark, safe to assume they're
20 referring to the Alere mark?

21 A. Except in Paragraph 9.

22 Q. Right. That's obviously a typo.
23 Correct?

24 A. Correct.

25 Q. "Respondent's use of the mark ALAIR

1 for the good and services identified in
2 Registration Nos. 2856168 and 3380080 is likely
3 to cause confusion, mistake or deception as to
4 the source of Respondent's goods and services,
5 all to Petitioner's damage. Furthermore,
6 customers or potential customers are likely to
7 believe that Respondent's goods and services are
8 sponsored or approved by or affiliated with
9 Petitioner when that is not the case."

10 Do you see where it says that?

11 A. I see where it says that.

12 Q. If you turn to Exhibit 3, in
13 Paragraphs 9 and 11 of the answer, Asthmatx
14 denied the allegations of confusion that were
15 contained in Paragraphs 9 and 11 of the
16 Complaint.

17 Do you see that?

18 A. I see that.

19 Q. The basis of that denial was because
20 Asthmatx believed that the Alair mark and Alere
21 mark were sufficiently different as to not cause
22 confusion?

23 A. I'm not aware of that reasoning.

24 Q. Not an unreasonable assumption that
25 that would be the basis of a denial, correct?

1 MR. WALZ: Objection. Speculation.

2 A. I would not know.

3 BY MR. HANSEN:

4 Q. Who within Asthmatx was tasked with
5 addressing legal matters such as the petition
6 for cancellation?

7 A. That would be Nena Bains.

8 Q. Is she still with the company?

9 A. No.

10 Q. Where is she?

11 A. She is a partner at a law firm in the
12 Bay area.

13 Q. And what is she always -- was she
14 Asthmatx's employee at a time?

15 A. Yes. She left soon after the Boston
16 Scientific acquisition.

17 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
18 4, Alair Directions for Use, Bates
19 BSC000662 through 675, and Number 5,
20 Alair Operator's Manual, Bates
21 BSC000677 through 692, were marked for
22 identification.)

23 BY MR. HANSEN:

24 Q. You've been handed exhibits --
25 Applicant's Exhibits 4 and 5.

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Which I'll identify for the record.

3 Exhibit 4 is the Alair Bronchial

4 Thermoplasty Catheter Directions for Use

5 produced at BSC-662 through 675.

6 Exhibit 5 is the Alair Bronchial

7 Thermoplasty Radiofrequency Controller, Model

8 ATS 200 Operator's Manual produced at BSC-677

9 through 692.

10 Are you familiar with Exhibits 4 and

11 5?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Are these documents that you or your

14 team at Asthmatx or Boston Scientific created?

15 A. Yes. I created the originals with

16 Asthmatx, and then was less involved in the

17 final documents with Boston Scientific.

18 Q. These documents, Exhibits 4 and 5,

19 they're provided to physicians who are going to

20 be using the device, correct?

21 A. Yes, they are shipped with the product

22 when the product is sold.

23 Q. Are they shipped with only the

24 controller, or are they shipped with each

25 catheter that's sold as well?

1 A. Exhibit 5 is shipped with each
2 controller, which is a capital equipment single,
3 so one operator's manual stays with the
4 controller.

5 Exhibit 4 is shipped with each and
6 every catheter.

7 Q. Does anybody else get these documents?

8 A. When asked, an operator's manual can
9 be sent to purchasing or the service and
10 maintenance within the hospital. If they wanted
11 an extra copy, they could ask for one.

12 Q. Let's focus on Exhibit 4 to start.

13 A. The catheter directions for use,
14 correct?

15 Q. Correct.

16 If you turn to Page 4 of that
17 document, there's a section on the left-hand
18 side that says "Warnings."

19 Do you see that?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And it indicates that "Failure to
22 follow any instructions or failure to heed any
23 warnings or precautions may result in harm or
24 injury to the patient."

25 Do you see that?

1 A. Correct.

2 Q. That's a true statement, right?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. If the device isn't used properly, it
5 could harm a patient?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. And it could cause serious harm to a
8 patient if not used properly, right?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Boston Scientific requires physicians
11 to be trained on how to use this device,
12 correct?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And that's before they can use it in a
15 live patient, correct?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. And I believe when they're first
18 starting out using the device with live
19 patients, there's a Boston Scientific
20 representative present, correct?

21 A. Typically, yes.

22 Q. And is that a Boston Scientific sales
23 representative, or is that somebody else?

24 A. Sales, marketing, or clinical, someone
25 appropriately skilled in the ability to proctor

1 cases.

2 Q. The Alair Catheter in the Alair System
3 can't just be used by any physician, correct?

4 A. Correct.

5 Q. And, in fact, on the first page -- or
6 Page 3 of this document, I guess, it says "For
7 Professional Use Only. The Alair Catheter must
8 be used by a physician who has training and
9 experience in performing bronchoscopic
10 procedures."

11 Do you see that? I'm sorry, I jumped
12 ahead of you. So it's -- you're on the correct
13 page, just right here (indicating).

14 A. "For Professional Use Only."

15 Q. "For Professional Use Only. The Alair
16 Catheter must be used by a physician who has
17 training and experience" --

18 A. -- "in bronchoscopic procedures,"
19 correct.

20 Q. And that's a limited subset of
21 physicians, correct?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. These are physicians who specialize in
24 pulmonology, correct?

25 A. Correct.

1 Q. And they tend to be interventional
2 pulmonologists, correct?

3 A. Not necessarily. A pulmonologist is
4 trained in bronchoscopy. An interventional
5 bronchoscopist or intervention pulmonologist is
6 specialized in bronchoscopy, but all
7 pulmonologists are trained to do bronchoscopy.

8 Q. Okay. It's more typical than not for
9 a physician doing these type of procedures to be
10 an interventional pulmonologist, correct?

11 A. No. The most common is just a
12 pulmonologist.

13 Q. Okay. A pulmonologist trained in --

14 A. Trained in bronchoscopy, correct.

15 Q. And specifically trained in how to use
16 this device?

17 A. Trained to use a bronchoscope, and
18 then trained to use the Alair System.

19 Q. Okay. So there's two levels of
20 training that go on, correct?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. There's the standard training that a
23 pulmonologist will have on how to use a
24 bronchoscope, correct?

25 A. Correct.

1 Q. And then Boston Scientific will then
2 provide training to the physician on how to use
3 the Alair device?

4 A. The Alair System, correct. So it's
5 training in bronchoscopy, and experience in
6 bronchoscopy. So training, but then showing a
7 consistent use of a bronchoscope and experience
8 in bronchoscopy.

9 Q. Okay. And how do you assess the
10 experience of a pulmonologist in -- I'm sorry,
11 I'm bad at pronouncing this one.

12 A. Bronchoscopy.

13 Q. -- bronchoscopy?

14 A. That they routinely do bronchoscopy
15 versus someone who was trained, did bronchoscopy
16 in a fellowship and has not done a bronchoscopy
17 for five years, that would not be someone
18 experienced in bronchoscopy. They would need to
19 do -- routinely do bronchoscopy every year.

20 Q. Okay. It's fair to say that the --
21 what I've seen referred to as the BT
22 procedure --

23 A. Bronchial thermoplasty with the Alair
24 System, correct.

25 Q. The BT procedure isn't for every

1 patient with asthma, correct?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. It's for people with severe asthma,
4 correct?

5 A. Correct, adults with severe asthma.

6 Q. And people with severe asthma who
7 aren't being -- aren't becoming asymptomatic
8 through the use of other medicines?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. And the decision on whether somebody
11 is a candidate for a BT procedure is an analysis
12 done by one of the pulmonologists who is trained
13 to perform the procedure, correct?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And obviously the patient is involved
16 in the process, right?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. They have to give their informed
19 consent that, yes, they want this procedure,
20 correct?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. But the device itself can only be sold
23 by a physician or on the order of a physician,
24 correct?

25 A. It's sold to a hospital on the order

1 of a physician.

2 Q. Okay.

3 A. A physician would not buy the product.

4 Q. Okay. If we look at -- and we may be
5 getting into semantics. But if we look at the
6 very top of Page 3, it says "Caution: Federal
7 Law (USA) restricts this device to sale by or on
8 the order of a physician," correct?

9 A. On the order of a physician would
10 apply to a medical device, correct.

11 Q. Okay. And the typical process would
12 be that the physician determines that a patient
13 is a candidate for the procedure, correct?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. He would then -- he or she would then
16 get the consent of the patient to perform the
17 procedure, correct?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Then he or she would notify the
20 hospital purchasing office that they should
21 place an order for an Alair Catheter?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. And then the purchase would be made,
24 correct?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. What are the -- you talked about
2 marketing channels, and what Boston Scientific
3 does to market the product, and one of the
4 things you mentioned was a direct sales force.

5 A. Mm-hmm.

6 Q. How many sales representatives does
7 Boston Scientific have who are trained in to
8 promote and sell the Asthmatx -- sorry, the
9 Alair device?

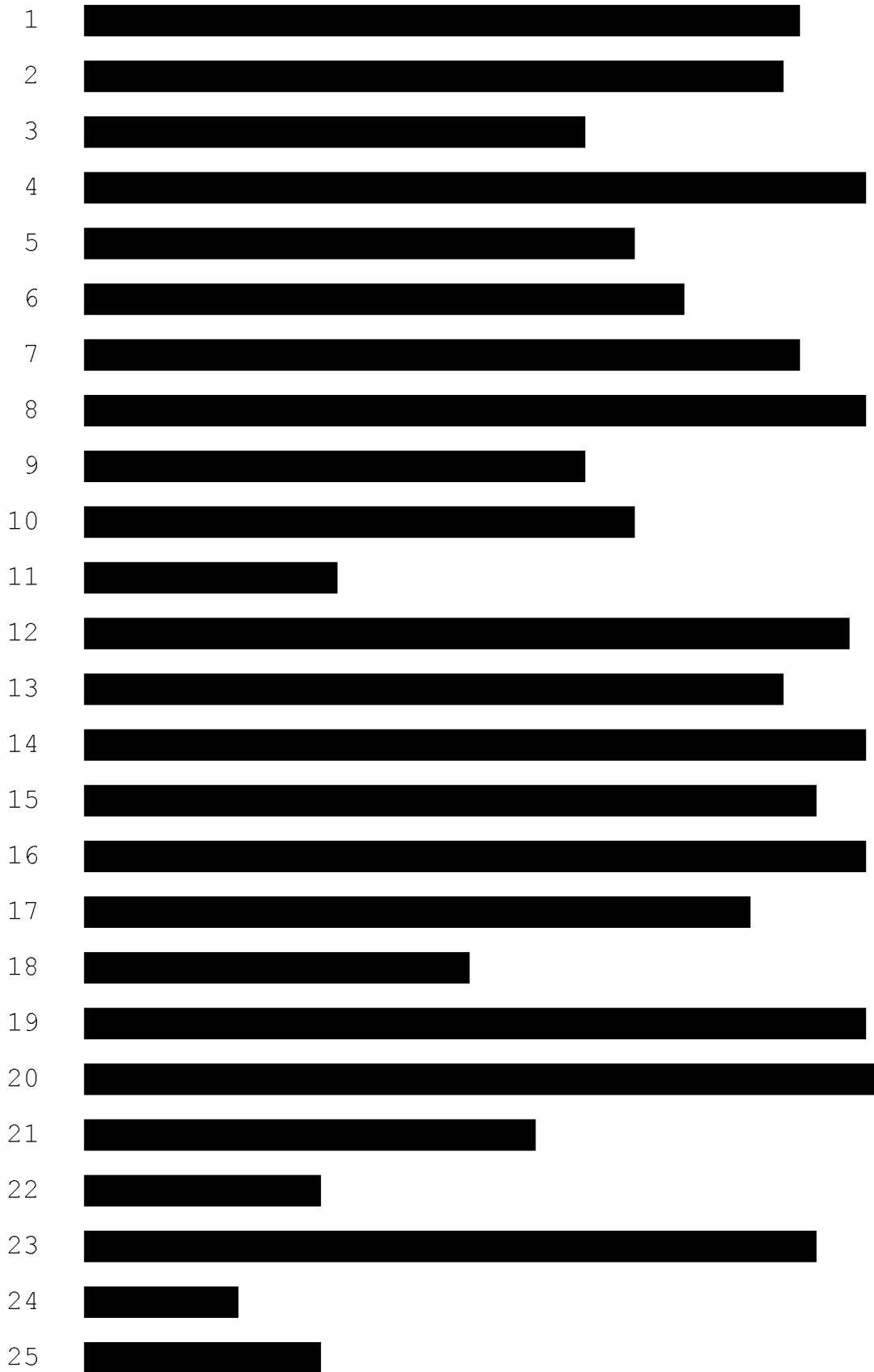
10 THE WITNESS: Is that a confidential
11 thing to share that as far as the scope of our
12 sales force?

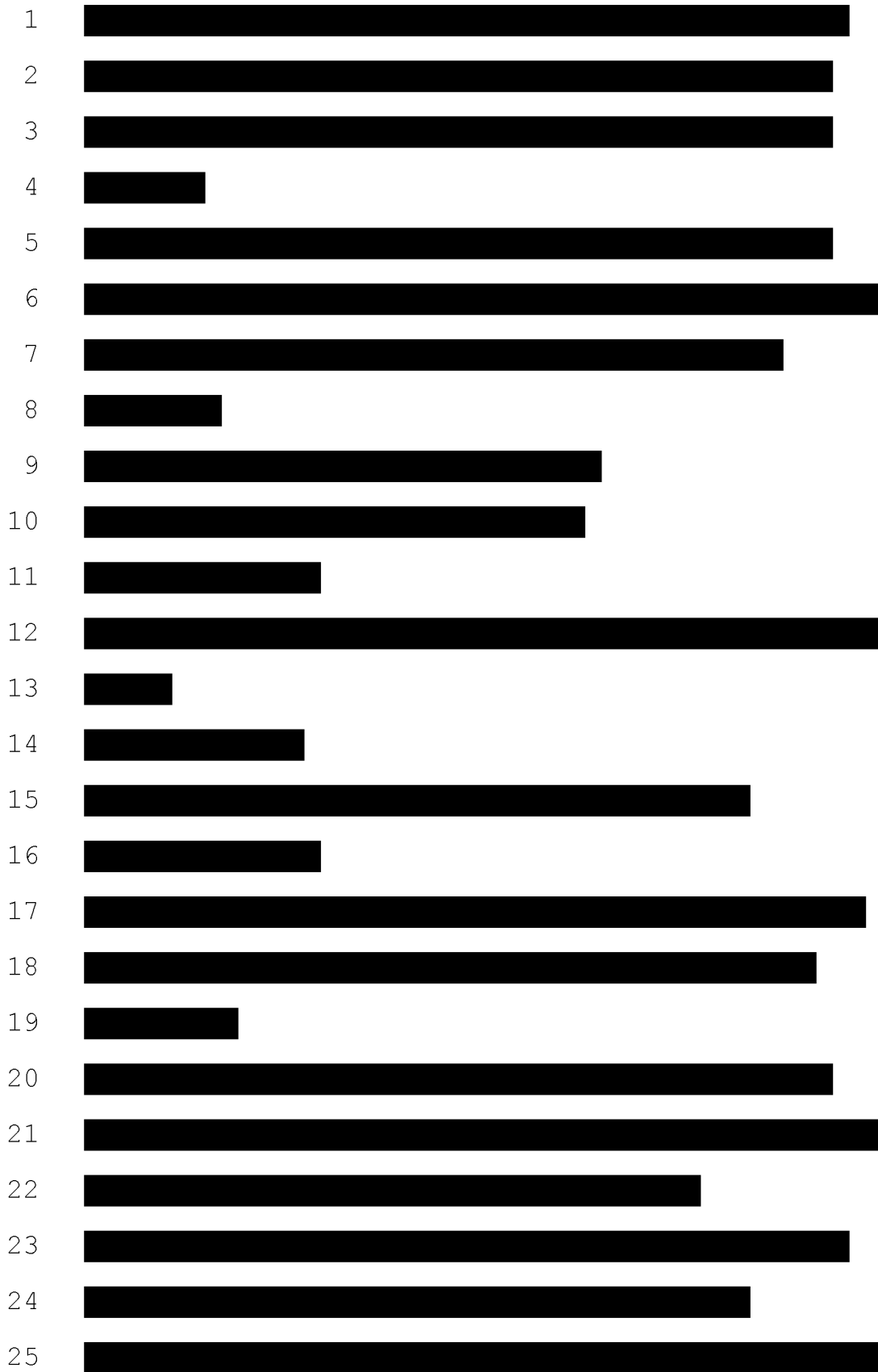
13 MR. WALZ: We'll designate pages as
14 confidential, so you can answer.

15 A. This, I would think, should be kept
16 confidential.

17 [REDACTED]
18 [REDACTED]
19 [REDACTED]
20 [REDACTED]
21 [REDACTED]
22 [REDACTED]
23 [REDACTED]
24 [REDACTED]
25 [REDACTED]

1	[REDACTED]
2	[REDACTED]
3	[REDACTED]
4	[REDACTED]
5	[REDACTED]
6	[REDACTED]
7	[REDACTED]
8	[REDACTED]
9	[REDACTED]
10	[REDACTED]
11	[REDACTED]
12	[REDACTED]
13	[REDACTED]
14	[REDACTED]
15	[REDACTED]
16	[REDACTED]
17	[REDACTED]
18	[REDACTED]
19	[REDACTED]
20	[REDACTED]
21	[REDACTED]
22	[REDACTED]
23	[REDACTED]
24	[REDACTED]
25	[REDACTED]





1 [REDACTED]
2 [REDACTED]
3 [REDACTED]
4 [REDACTED]
5 [REDACTED]
6 [REDACTED]
7 [REDACTED]
8 [REDACTED]
9 [REDACTED]
10 [REDACTED]
11 [REDACTED]
12 [REDACTED]
13 [REDACTED]
14 [REDACTED]
15 [REDACTED]
16 [REDACTED]
17 [REDACTED]
18 [REDACTED]
19 [REDACTED]

20 Q. Would you at least agree with me that
21 the use of sales representatives is an important
22 marketing effort?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. The Page 3 identifies the indication
25 for use for the Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty

1 System. It's on the right-hand side about
2 halfway down. It says "The Alair Bronchial
3 Thermoplasty System is indicated for the
4 treatment of severe persistent asthma in
5 patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not
6 well controlled with inhaled" -- can you help me
7 with the --

8 A. Corticosteroids.

9 Q. -- "corticosteroids and long acting
10 beta agonists," correct?

11 A. Correct. Hence, we say ICS and LABA.

12 Q. Got it.

13 It's not indicated for the treatment
14 of COPD, correct?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. And it's not marketed to treat COPD,
17 correct?

18 A. Correct.

19 Q. Boston Scientific doesn't hold out to
20 physicians that this product can be used to
21 treat COPD, correct?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. And Boston Scientific doesn't hold out
24 to patients that this product can be used to
25 treat COPD, correct?

1 A. Correct.

2 Q. You mentioned earlier that there were
3 discussions regarding a potential clinical trial
4 in the COPD space. Do you recall that
5 testimony?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. That clinical trial is not underway,
8 correct?

9 A. By Boston Scientific, no.

10 Q. And is there even a clinical trial
11 designed for use of the Alair System in treating
12 COPD?

13 A. By Boston Scientific, not that I'm
14 aware of. There may be independent
15 investigator-sponsored research pursuing the use
16 of the Alair product with patients with COPD.

17 Q. But not sponsored by Boston
18 Scientific?

19 A. Not sponsored, at this point in time,
20 no.

21 Q. What is Bronchus Technologies,
22 Incorporated?

23 A. Bronchus was a company that was
24 founded in the late '90s, a start-up medical
25 device company focused in two areas; one was

1 emphysema, and one was asthma. Both products
2 were under development under a single entity.
3 And in around 2002, the decision was made by the
4 board of Bronchus to split the companies in two;
5 one company to pursue the emphysema product,
6 another company to pursue the asthma product,
7 the Alair System. So Asthmatx was spun out of
8 Bronchus to pursue the asthma product with
9 Alair. And Bronchus continued under that name
10 to pursue the emphysema product, and I do not
11 recall the trade name of that product.

12 MR. HANSEN: Okay. Let's go off the
13 record for a moment.

14 (Off the record discussion.)

15 (Pause.)

16 BY MR. HANSEN:

17 Q. Just following up on the sales reps,
18 their jobs are to have relationships with the
19 doctors, correct?

20 A. That's part of their job.

21 Q. Right.

22 And as part of that relationship
23 building, they hold themselves out as Boston
24 Scientific representatives, right?

25 A. They represent Boston Scientific, yes.

1 Q. Right. I mean there should be no
2 question in the physician's mind that this
3 person is a representative of Boston Scientific?

4 A. Correct.

5 Q. And the representatives know which
6 products Boston Scientific sells and which
7 products they don't, correct?

8 A. I believe so.

9 Q. And you would expect that a Boston
10 Scientific representative who has been promoting
11 and selling the Alair device to be able to
12 inform a physician that Boston Scientific
13 doesn't sell the Alair device, correct?

14 A. I guess so.

15 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
16 6, Screen shot of btforasthma website,
17 Bates BSC000794, was marked for
18 identification.)

19 BY MR. HANSEN:

20 Q. You've been handed Applicant's
21 Exhibit 6, which is a screen shot of the website
22 btforasthma.com produced at BSC-794 through 95.
23 And you're familiar with --

24 A. This website, yes.

25 Q. Thank you.

1 The title of the website is Bronchial
2 Thermoplasty, correct?

3 A. The title of the website is
4 btforasthma.com. The Bronchial Thermoplasty
5 logo is what is at the upper left corner of the
6 website.

7 Q. Okay. Let's start with the URL. The
8 domain or URL for this website is
9 www.btforasthma.com?

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. Correct? That's the web address that
12 somebody would type into their server --

13 A. Search, right.

14 Q. Sorry. Let's not -- let me finish my
15 question.

16 That's the web address that somebody
17 would type into their Internet Explorer to
18 arrive at the website, correct?

19 A. Correct.

20 Q. Boston Scientific doesn't own
21 Alair.com, correct?

22 A. I would not say no. I believe we may
23 have purchased -- we purchased a number of
24 different domain names that all redirect to
25 btforasthma. I'm not familiar with what those

1 are. I know one, for example, is
2 bronchialthermoplasty.com directs to
3 btforasthma. At one point in time there was
4 Asthmatx.com. I believe there was a variety of
5 Alair URLs that also were in existence. I'm not
6 familiar with what we have currently.

7 Q. Okay. If Boston Scientific owns
8 Alair.com, that domain, you would expect that it
9 redirects to this website?

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. And if they don't own it, it goes to
12 some other business, correct?

13 A. Correct.

14 Q. At any rate, Boston Scientific has
15 made the decision that the domain name, the main
16 domain name for the page here, is
17 btforasthma.com, correct?

18 A. Correct.

19 Q. And not Alair.com?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. And if you look in the very far upper
22 left-hand corner of this document, there's the
23 words "Bronchial Thermoplasty," and then a
24 little line, and then "Bronchial Thermoplasty."

25 Do you see that?

1 A. Correct.

2 Q. Do you understand that to be -- that
3 the text "Bronchial Thermoplasty" is what
4 appears in the browser tab on your internet
5 browser when you're on this page?

6 A. Correct. It's a pull-down menu when
7 you hit that. It's a browser tab with pull-down
8 menu within it.

9 Q. I think we're talking about two
10 different things. I just want to try to clarify
11 this.

12 You're familiar with Internet
13 Explorer?

14 A. Correct.

15 Q. And when you're on Internet Explorer,
16 you can have multiple web pages open at once,
17 correct?

18 A. Correct.

19 Q. And when you have a web page open,
20 there's a tab at the top of your screen,
21 correct?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. And you can click on the different
24 tabs to go to the different web pages you have
25 open?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Correct?

3 And those tabs have text in them,
4 correct?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. To identify what web page is which?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And the text that appears for this web
9 page in that tab is "Bronchial Thermoplasty,"
10 correct?

11 A. I'm unsure of that.

12 Q. Okay. The Bronchial Thermoplasty kind
13 of logo directly beneath what we were just
14 talking about, is that what you're saying is a
15 drop-down menu?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. And what appears at the drop-down?

18 A. So under the "Bronchial Thermoplasty,"
19 the first small letters, that would have "How It
20 Works," the Alair System, it might have
21 something about airway smooth muscle. I'm
22 forgetting. And under "Real People, Real
23 Results" you'd drop down and you'd see different
24 patient video opportunities or physician
25 interview. And "Are you a BT candidate," you

1 would see the quiz or the survey, and questions
2 about who was the right candidate for BT. And
3 then "Find a BT clinic," that pulls into the
4 map.

5 Q. As we're looking at this -- this is
6 the home page for the website, correct?

7 A. Correct.

8 Q. And as we're looking at this
9 Exhibit 6, the only reference to Alair that I
10 see is in this disclaimer towards the bottom of
11 the page in small print that says Alair, and the
12 Bronchial Thermoplasty logo "are registered
13 trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation."
14 Correct?

15 A. On the home page, yes. And then when
16 you click to, you know, how it works or the
17 results, then you get into the Alair System.

18 Q. Okay. And on the home page, the only
19 reference to Alair is in that disclaimer,
20 correct?

21 A. Correct.

22 Can I provide more reason as to why?

23 Okay. We're good. Yes.

24

25

1 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
2 7, Screen shot of btforasthma website,
3 Bates BSC000797 through 799, was
4 marked for identification.)

5 BY MR. HANSEN:

6 Q. You've been handed Applicant's
7 Exhibit 7, which was a document produced at
8 BSC-797 through 799, and this is the "Support
9 for patients" page on the btforasthma website,
10 right?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. You testified a little earlier about
13 this DVD, correct?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And I presume copies of that DVD still
16 exist, right?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And are you aware of whether any
19 copies of that DVD were produced in this case?

20 A. I'm not aware.

21 Q. One way or the other?

22 A. I'm not aware one way or the other.

23 Q. Okay. As we're looking at this page,
24 the only references to Alair are in the
25 disclaimer, correct?

1 A. On this web page, yes.

2 Q. And I can't read the text on this DVD
3 here all that well, but I don't see a reference
4 to Alair on the DVD cover at least.

5 A. The trademark statement probably
6 appears there.

7 Q. The disclaimer?

8 A. So it would say Alair, and the BT logo
9 are trademarks of, I believe.

10 Q. Okay.

11 A. Below the BT logo in the center bottom
12 of the DVD, I believe.

13 Q. This is a page that's -- the intent of
14 this page is for patients or potential patients
15 to access it?

16 A. For potential patients and their
17 families or caregivers, yes.

18 Q. Okay. The text says "Start your BT
19 journey."

20 Do you see that?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Does that refer to Bronchial
23 Thermoplasty?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. In the kind of banner at the top, it

1 says "BT. Because your world is bigger than
2 your asthma."

3 Do you see that?

4 A. Correct.

5 Q. Again, that's a reference to Bronchial
6 Thermoplasty?

7 A. Bronchial Thermoplasty, yes.

8 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
9 8, Screen shot of btforasthma website,
10 Bates BSC000803 through 805, was
11 marked for identification.)

12 BY MR. HANSEN:

13 Q. Exhibit 8 is a document produced at
14 BSC-803 to 805, it is the "Current treatment
15 options" page of the btforasthma website,
16 correct?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And this is a page that is intended to
19 be accessed by potential patients and their
20 families or caregivers?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. This contains links to the Asthma
23 Impact Survey that you referenced earlier,
24 correct?

25 A. So when I referred to a drop-down

1 menu, the "Are you a BT candidate" at the top,
2 when you click on that, this is your drop-down
3 menu on the left, so you can go to "Take the
4 survey," "Are you a candidate," "About asthma,"
5 and "Current treatment options." So this page,
6 this Exhibit 8, is actually the pages of the
7 last choice in the drop-down menu which is
8 "Current treatment options." You would click on
9 the "Take the Asthma Impact Survey" and that
10 drop-down menu to take you to a different page.

11 Q. Okay. And that would lead you to
12 the --

13 A. The survey.

14 Q. -- survey you discussed earlier,
15 correct?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Underneath that it asks "Are you a BT
18 candidate," correct?

19 A. And that's a separate -- that's a
20 link, and that would bring you to a second page
21 within this drop-down menu.

22 Q. It's asking or posing maybe the
23 rhetorical question or maybe the very real
24 question to the patient, their family or
25 caregiver, are you a candidate for the BT

1 procedure?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. And as I look through this page, I
4 only see the reference to Alair in the
5 disclaimer.

6 A. On this page, yes, because "Current
7 treatment options" is describing other treatment
8 options other than BT with the Alair System.

9 Q. So the answer is yes, it's only a
10 disclaimer?

11 A. Yes.

12 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
13 9, Screen shot of btforasthma website,
14 Bates BSC000806 through 808, was
15 marked for identification.)

16 BY MR. HANSEN:

17 Q. You've been handed Applicant's
18 Exhibit 9, which was produced at BSC-806
19 through 808. This is the "About BT" page on the
20 btforasthma.com website?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And this contains -- so this is --
23 using what you told me on the last exhibit, I
24 think I'm learning here, so there's a line under
25 "Bronchial Thermoplasty" with like a little

1 triangle?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. That indicates that the drop-down menu
4 for Bronchial Thermoplasty has been activated on
5 this website, correct?

6 A. Correct. It's the four items on the
7 left.

8 Q. "Proven benefits," "About Bronchial
9 Thermoplasty," "Asthma and your airways," "How
10 BT is performed"?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. Okay. And Boston Scientific chose to
13 include the link "About Bronchial Thermoplasty,"
14 correct?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. Instead of saying about Alair,
17 correct?

18 A. Yes, because we're explaining what
19 Bronchial Thermoplasty is in this drop-down
20 menu. Inserting Alair there would have been
21 confusing.

22 Q. And you made the choice to say "About
23 Bronchial Thermoplasty," correct?

24 A. Correct.

25 Q. And you gave the reasons for your

1 choice.

2 On this page there's the use of Alair
3 in the disclaimer, and the use of Alair one
4 other time on the page?

5 A. "BT delivered by the Alair System."

6 Q. And those are the only two references
7 to Alair, correct?

8 A. Correct, on this page. But the "Learn
9 about how BT performed" is a link that will take
10 you to describing the Alair System.

11 Q. I'm only talking about this page right
12 now.

13 So on this page, those are the only
14 two references to the Alair mark, correct?

15 A. Yes.

16 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
17 10, Screen shot of btforasthma
18 website, Bates BSC000812 and 813, was
19 marked for identification.)

20 BY MR. HANSEN:

21 Q. You've been handed Exhibit 10, which
22 is a document produced by Boston Scientific at
23 BSC-812 through 813, this is the "Are you a BT
24 candidate" page on the btforasthma.com website,
25 correct?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And the four clickable links, "Asthma
3 Impact Survey," "Are you a BT candidate," "About
4 asthma," "Current treatment options" are the
5 drop-down on this page, correct?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. The Alair name is only used in the
8 disclaimer of this page, correct?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Under the -- in the text on the second
11 page, on 813, there's a question posed, "Who
12 performs the BT procedure?"

13 Do you see where I'm at?

14 A. Mm-hmm.

15 Q. It says "BT is performed by a
16 specialty trained pulmonologist."

17 Do you see that?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And we talked briefly about that
20 training before, correct?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And it indicates "If your regular
23 doctor currently managing your asthma is an
24 allergist, family practice physician, general
25 practitioner, internist or other physician, he

1 or she will be able to refer you to a BT clinic
2 for a consultation with a pulmonologist."

3 Do you see that?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And these types of physicians
6 identified, those are the types of referring
7 physicians --

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. -- that we've talked about, correct?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. BT clinic, that refers to a clinic
12 that has one or more physicians at it that have
13 been trained to use the Alair System?

14 A. Correct.

15 Q. Okay. And Boston Scientific has made
16 the decision to call those BT clinics, correct?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. Instead of Alair clinics, correct?

19 A. Correct.

20 Q. And if I'm reading this correctly, I
21 mean this is kind of a -- this sentence kind of
22 describes to the patient the basic process that
23 should be followed; if your regular asthma doc
24 isn't a pulmonologist, they can refer you to a
25 doctor who is who can consult with you on

1 whether you're actually a candidate or not for
2 BT, correct?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And that would be kind of a typical
5 process followed by a patient, correct?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And kind of every step of the way
8 they're being consulted by a physician, correct?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And when the ultimate decision is made
11 on whether to have this procedure performed, to
12 use the Alair device, that's in consultation
13 with a doctor who is specially trained to use
14 the Alair device, correct?

15 A. Correct, the doctor and the patient
16 together.

17 Q. Correct. Okay.

18 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
19 11, Screen shot of btforasthma
20 website, Bates BSC000814 through 816,
21 was marked for identification.)

22 BY MR. HANSEN:

23 Q. Exhibit 11 is a document produced by
24 Boston Scientific at BSC-814 through 816, and
25 this is the page that contains the Asthma Impact

1 Survey on the btforasthma.com website, correct?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Earlier you testified regarding about
4 kind of what the -- how the result of the impact
5 survey is conveyed to the potential patient,
6 correct?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Are you aware of whether or not any
9 exemplars of how that's conveyed were produced
10 in this case?

11 A. I'm not aware.

12 Q. You're just not aware one way or the
13 other?

14 A. No.

15 Q. This page contains one reference to
16 Alair in the text, and then one reference in the
17 disclaimer, correct?

18 A. Correct.

19 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
20 12, Screen shot of btforasthma
21 website, Bates BSC000817 and 818, was
22 marked for identification.)

23 BY MR. HANSEN:

24 Q. You've been handed Exhibit 12, which
25 is a document produced at BSC-817 to 818. This

1 is the "Find a BT Clinic" portion of the
2 btforasthma.com website, correct?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And the Alair name is only used in the
5 disclaimer on this page, correct?

6 A. Yes.

7 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
8 13, Screen shot of btforasthma
9 website, Bates BSC000819 through 821,
10 was marked for identification.)

11 BY MR. HANSEN:

12 Q. You've been handed Exhibit 13, which
13 is a document produced at BSC-819 through 821,
14 and this is the "Patient stories" portion of the
15 btforasthma.com website, correct?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. This is the portion that you, I think,
18 testified earlier where people can access the
19 patient testimonials?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And these -- the testimonials here are
22 what were used for the television commercial?

23 A. Portions of these, yes.

24 Q. Okay. Were there any other patient
25 testimonials used, or portions of patient

1 testimonials used for that television
2 commercial?

3 A. No, they would have come out of this
4 subset.

5 Q. Okay. On this page there's one
6 reference to Alair in the text, and then the
7 standard reference to it in the disclaimer,
8 correct?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. And if we -- we can review all of the
11 videos if you want, I have them, but just to
12 shortcut it, hopefully you have a memory, the
13 only reference to Alair in these videos is in a
14 disclaimer at the very end of the video,
15 correct?

16 A. I believe so, correct.

17 Q. The patients in the videos when
18 they're giving their testimonials refer to it as
19 BT?

20 A. Yes.

21 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
22 14, Screen shot of btforasthma
23 website, Bates BSC000822 through 824,
24 was marked for identification.)

25 BY MR. HANSEN:

1 Q. Before we turn to the next exhibit, a
2 question about the television commercial. What
3 market was that run?

4 A. Dayton, Ohio.

5 Q. Is that the only market?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. When was that television commercial
8 run?

9 A. I believe it was 2013, middle of the
10 year 2013.

11 Q. Do you know for how long of a period
12 of time it was on the airwaves?

13 A. I believe about 12 weeks. It was a
14 pilot, so it was a defined period of time.

15 Q. Was there -- how many channels did it
16 air on?

17 A. It aired on a variety of channels. We
18 bought media through a media broker, if you
19 will, so we bought air time at certain times and
20 certain channels and networks that our research
21 showed that patients in our age demographics
22 were most likely to see the commercial.

23 Q. Who was the media broker?

24 A. Our agency was Giant, an ad agency out
25 of San Francisco, and they handled the brokering

1 for us. I believe they went with a third party,
2 and I don't remember that name.

3 Q. Do you know whether that television
4 commercial was produced in this case?

5 A. Produced?

6 Q. Produced to Holaira in discovery.

7 A. I don't know.

8 Q. Okay. You just don't know one way or
9 the other?

10 A. I don't know one way or the other.

11 Q. Do you know whether any documents that
12 would reflect the placement of the television ad
13 on various channels at various times, do you
14 know whether any such documents are maintained
15 by Boston Scientific or its advertising agency?

16 A. I believe there would be documentation
17 with the ad agency.

18 Q. Do you know whether any of that was
19 produced in this case?

20 A. I'm not aware.

21 Q. Do you have -- well, never mind. I'll
22 move on to this next exhibit, which I believe is
23 Exhibit 14.

24 Exhibit 14, BSC-822 through 824, which
25 is the "Physician stories" portion of the

1 website, correct?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. And this page has one use of Alair in
4 the text, and it has the standard use in the
5 disclaimer, correct?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. And similar to the patient videos,
8 these videos refer to BT as opposed to Alair,
9 correct?

10 A. I'm not sure. I would believe that
11 with the physician videos, there's more of a
12 discussion about the Alair System since the
13 physicians are describing the procedure in more
14 detail to a patient. So the quote on this page
15 may only refer to BT, but in the body of the
16 video, I believe a number of them refer to the
17 Alair System.

18 Q. Okay. And let's just bypass it by
19 doing this. I mean I can show you the videos.
20 But you would agree the videos are what they
21 are, right?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. And what was produced in this case
24 should be a true and accurate copy of the videos
25 that are available on the website, correct?

1 A. I would assume so.

2 Q. Okay. You have no reason to doubt
3 that true and accurate copies weren't produced
4 in this case?

5 A. No.

6 Q. And your testimony regarding the use
7 of Alair within these videos seemed a little bit
8 equivocal, you may have been guessing based on
9 your memory?

10 A. I don't have absolute certainty that
11 Alair is in there. I'm assuming it is mentioned
12 by a physician, yes.

13 Q. But you would defer to the video?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. If it's not actually in there, you
16 wouldn't dispute what the video says?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Okay. Let's just leave it at that.

19 A. Cut to the chase.

20 Q. Let's leave it at that instead of
21 playing all the videos and having recess time
22 watching movies.

23 A. Thank you.

24 Q. Let's move on.

25

1 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
2 15, Screen shot of btforasthma
3 website, Bates BSC000825 through 827,
4 was marked for identification.)

5 BY MR. HANSEN:

6 Q. Exhibit 15 has been handed to you,
7 which is document produced by Boston Scientific
8 at BSC-825 through 827, and this is the
9 "Overview for Physicians" page of the
10 btforasthma.com website, correct?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. And this is -- I think you testified
13 previously that this is intended for referring
14 physicians to educate themselves on the device
15 and procedure, correct?

16 A. Yes. Referring and treating,
17 primarily referring.

18 Q. Okay. There are four total uses of
19 Alair on this page that I could find, three in
20 the text, one in the disclaimer.

21 A. I believe that's true. Yes.

22 Q. And on the second page, on 82 --

23 A. Well, four, because there's -- on one
24 of the drop-down menus at the top is the Alair
25 System, that's literally on this page, and then

1 in the text there's three, and then a fourth in
2 the disclaimer.

3 Q. Got it. Thank you.

4 On the second page, 826, there's a
5 section "Who performs the BT procedure?"

6 Do you see that?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And it says "BT training is required,
9 and includes: Review of the Alair System
10 Catheter Directions and Use and Controller
11 Operator's Manual," right?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. "Guided didactic instruction in
14 computer simulation-based Bronchial Thermoplasty
15 Learning Center."

16 Do you see that?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And that's the computer training that
19 you referenced earlier?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. "Detailed in-service training of the
22 Alair System."

23 Do you see that?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. And that is performed by who, that

1 training?

2 A. A Boston Scientific sales rep.

3 Q. Okay. And then "Hands-on training
4 with Alair System in a lung model prior to
5 initial cases."

6 Do you see that?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And who does that?

9 A. A Boston Scientific representative.

10 Q. Okay. Is working with the physician
11 to complete that training?

12 A. Correct.

13 Q. "Proctoring of initial cases by Boston
14 Scientific Health Care Industry Representative."

15 Do you see that?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Is a health care industry
18 representative the same as a sales rep?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And then "Ongoing support of cases
21 when requested."

22 Do you see that?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. And that is if a physician has a
25 request to have any kind of support for a

1 procedure, Boston Scientific will provide it?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Any kind of question on if they have a
4 particularly difficult patient or problem with
5 the device, they can call Boston Scientific and
6 get support?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Is there any other training that isn't
9 listed here?

10 A. No. There's actually four instances
11 of Alair in the text; one in the drop-down menu,
12 and then another in the disclaimer, so there
13 would be six total.

14 Q. Six total on this page?

15 And the hope in providing this
16 training is that once the training is complete,
17 that the doctor is familiar with the device,
18 right?

19 A. Correct.

20 Q. And is able to competently use the
21 device?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. So that no mistakes are made in the
24 procedure, correct?

25 A. Correct.

1 Q. And you would expect that a doctor who
2 encounters an issue with a device to notify
3 Boston Scientific, correct?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. If they open a box and say "this looks
6 a little bit different from what I've received
7 in the past," you would expect them to contact
8 Boston Scientific and inquire about that?

9 A. Yes.

10 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
11 16, Screen shot for btforasthma
12 website, Bates BSC000828 and 829, was
13 marked for identification.)

14 BY MR. HANSEN:

15 Q. Exhibit 16 was produced by Boston
16 Scientific at BSC-828 through 829. This is the
17 "Physician information request" page on
18 btforasthma.com, correct?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And is this intended for physician
21 use, or for potential patient use?

22 A. This exact page you would get to by
23 clicking the "Physician information request" and
24 it brings you to this page. There's a separate
25 page for patient information.

1 Q. Okay. So this would be -- doctors use
2 this?

3 A. Doctors.

4 Q. The only reference to Alair on this
5 page is in the disclaimer, correct?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. Earlier you testified about data
8 relating to clicks onto the website, website
9 traffic, correct?

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. Is that data that Boston Scientific
12 regularly keeps and tracks?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. Do you know whether any of that
15 information was produced in this case?

16 A. I'm not aware.

17 Q. Just don't know one way or the other?

18 A. Don't know one way or the other.

19 Q. Were you involved at all in the effort
20 to collect documents to produce in this case?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Did anybody ask you to provide such
23 documents, the click, or the web traffic
24 documents?

25 A. I'm not aware one way or the other.

1 Q. Okay. Is there anybody else in --
2 well, is it part of your job to track the web
3 traffic?

4 A. It's someone on my team.

5 Q. Okay. Who is that?

6 A. It would be Bri Amarillas.

7 Q. And Bri reports up to you?

8 A. Into another manager, and then to me.

9 MR. WALZ: Do you want to break for
10 lunch at some point?

11 MR. HANSEN: Sure. Let's go off the
12 record.

13 (Off the record discussion.)

14 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
15 17, Brochure titled A New Procedure
16 for Severe Asthma, Bates BSC000558
17 through 569, was marked for
18 identification.)

19 BY MR. HANSEN:

20 Q. I've handed you Exhibit 17, which is
21 BSC-558 through 569.

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. I believe this was included in a
24 compilation exhibit that you looked at earlier
25 today?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. You identified this as a brochure
3 that's provided to potential patients?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Is that correct?

6 On Page 9, BSC-566, there is a
7 description of the BT procedure, correct?

8 A. Correct.

9 Q. And is that -- is every BT procedure
10 done in three treatments like is described on
11 this page?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. This is kind of the standard way to do
14 it, correct?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Is there anything that's inaccurate
17 about this page in terms of how the procedure is
18 generally performed?

19 A. No, this is correct.

20 Q. Okay. And if we go to Page 11,
21 there's a section that says "What happens after
22 each BT treatment?"

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. And that's -- there's three
25 treatments, and this is what is done in-between

1 those three treatments, or just after each
2 treatment, correct?

3 A. After each treatment, correct.

4 Q. And is there -- this is all accurate,
5 correct?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. [REDACTED]

8 [REDACTED]

9 [REDACTED]

10 [REDACTED]

11 [REDACTED]

12 [REDACTED]

13 [REDACTED]

14 [REDACTED]

15 [REDACTED]

16 [REDACTED]

17 [REDACTED]

18 [REDACTED]

19 [REDACTED]

20 [REDACTED]

21 [REDACTED]

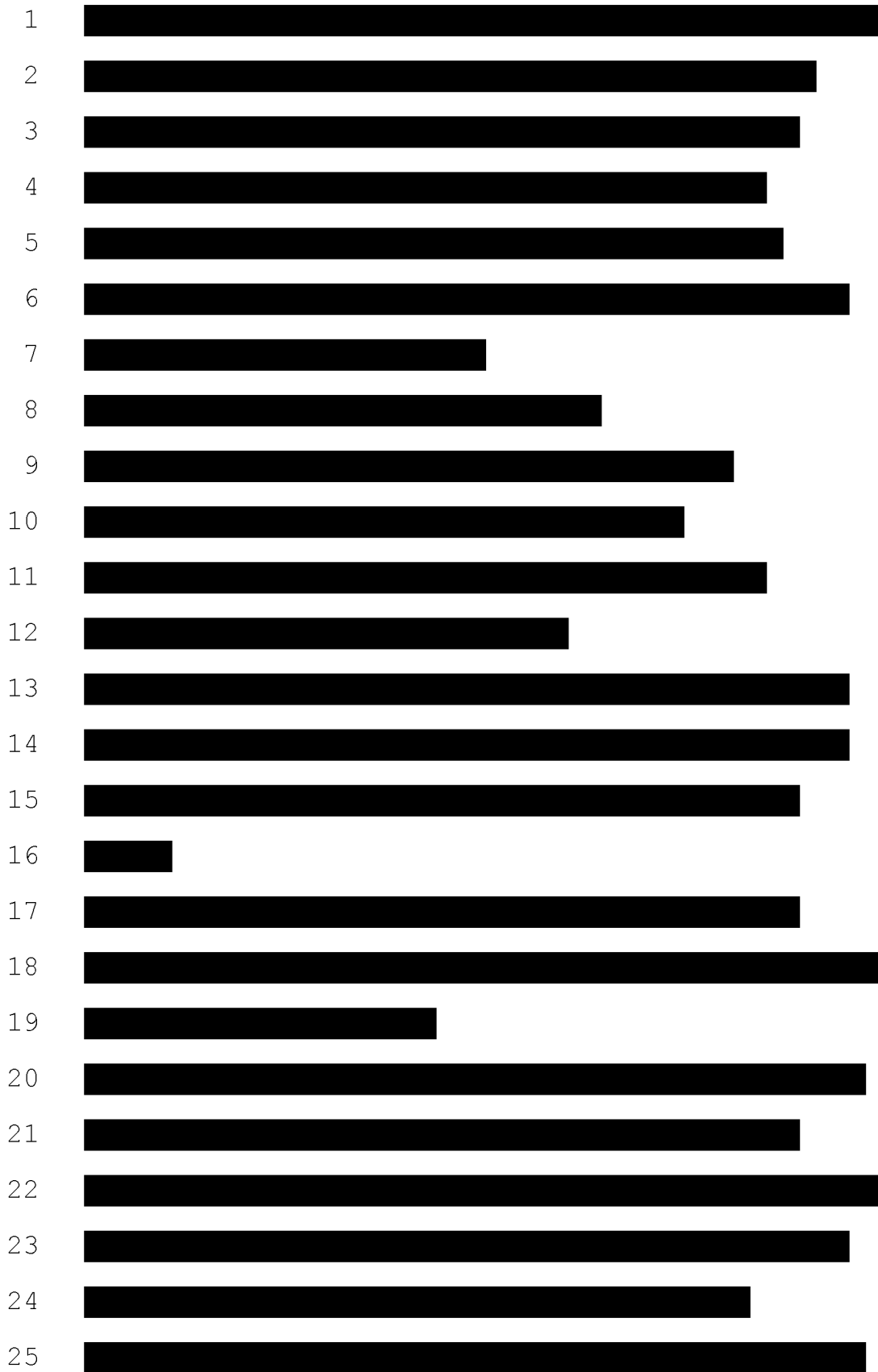
22 [REDACTED]

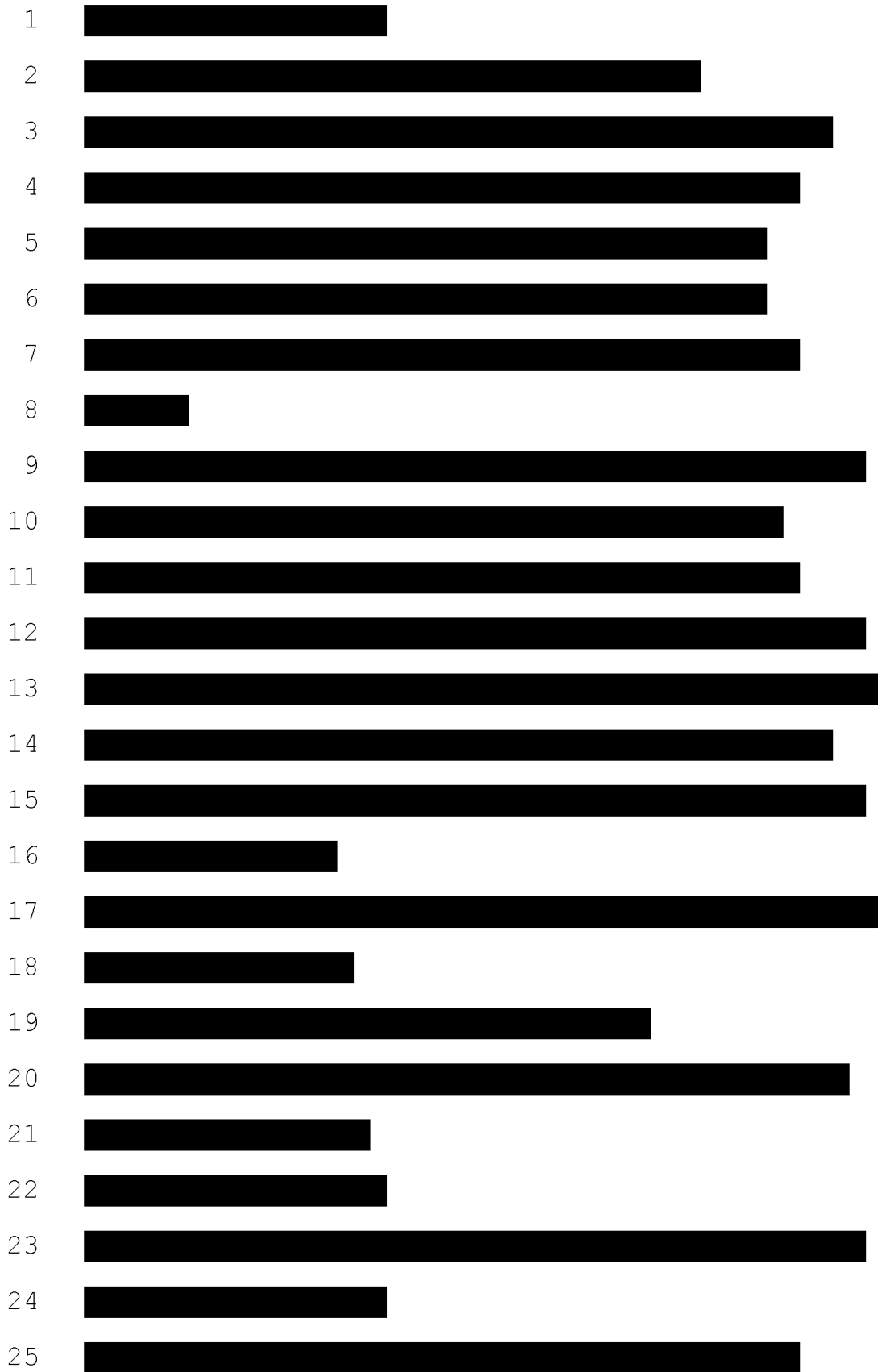
23 [REDACTED]

24 [REDACTED]

25 [REDACTED]







1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Q. Okay. You testified that there was PR
in a variety of channels, right?

A. Yes.

Q. New York Times, San Francisco
Chronicle, and a variety of different, I think
what you called, quote unquote, media hits?

A. Correct.

Q. Are all of these, quote unquote, media
hits maintained by Boston Scientific? Do you
have copies of all of them?

A. We have copies of some. Others we
don't have copies because they're copyrighted by
CBS or the New York Times. For some we
purchased copyright ability so we could do a
reprint.

1 Q. So for ones that are copyrighted by,
2 say, the New York Times, you don't have a
3 clipping out of the newspaper at the office that
4 reflects the actual article that it was
5 referencing?

6 A. We probably saved a copy, but that's
7 not something that we own and can distribute.

8 Q. Right.

9 You don't publicly redistribute it?

10 A. No.

11 Q. I'm just asking if you have a copy of
12 these things, whether or not you redistribute
13 them or not.

14 A. I believe I have a copy.

15 Q. Okay.

16 A. Some of them are internet links.

17 Q. Right. So you might have a link to a
18 video on the internet that reflects a news story
19 that occurred in the past?

20 A. Right. Or linked to CBS News, and
21 within that.

22 Q. Got it.

23 You mentioned a banner ad, I think you
24 called it rich digital, which is a video that is
25 kind of streaming when you scroll over the

1 banner ad?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. Do you know whether that video has
4 been produced in this case?

5 A. I'm not aware.

6 Q. And that video was created using
7 portions of the patient testimonials?

8 A. Correct.

9 Q. You testified regarding trade shows
10 that Boston Scientific regularly attends for the
11 Alair device.

12 A. Correct.

13 Q. Right?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And you said that 10 to 15,000 folks
16 attend the -- I think what you identified as the
17 CHEST and the ATS --

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. -- trade shows?

20 Okay. And those 10 to 15,000 people,
21 those are medical care -- medical professionals,
22 correct?

23 A. Correct.

24 Q. Okay.

25

1 (Whereupon, Applicant Exhibit Number
2 18, PowerPoint titled Asthmatx, Bates
3 BSC000623 through 643, was marked for
4 identification.)

5 BY MR. HANSEN:

6 Q. I've handed you Exhibit 18, but before
7 we start discussing it, are you familiar with
8 the term Class 3 medical device?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And that's an FDA designation,
11 correct?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. The Alair System is a Class 3 medical
14 device, correct?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. And the FDA restricts how Class 3
17 medical devices can be marketed and sold,
18 correct?

19 A. Correct. I believe that Class 3 also
20 implies the approval process.

21 Q. Right. Class 3 medical devices have
22 to go through a different approval process than
23 Class 2 or Class 1?

24 A. More rigorous, yes.

25 Q. And that's -- it requires, in most

1 cases, a randomized trial, correct?

2 A. Yes.

3 [REDACTED]

4 [REDACTED]

5 [REDACTED]

6 [REDACTED]

7 [REDACTED]

8 [REDACTED]

9 [REDACTED]

10 [REDACTED]

11 [REDACTED]

12 [REDACTED]

13 [REDACTED]

14 [REDACTED]

15 [REDACTED]

16 [REDACTED]

17 [REDACTED]

18 [REDACTED]

19 [REDACTED]

20 [REDACTED]

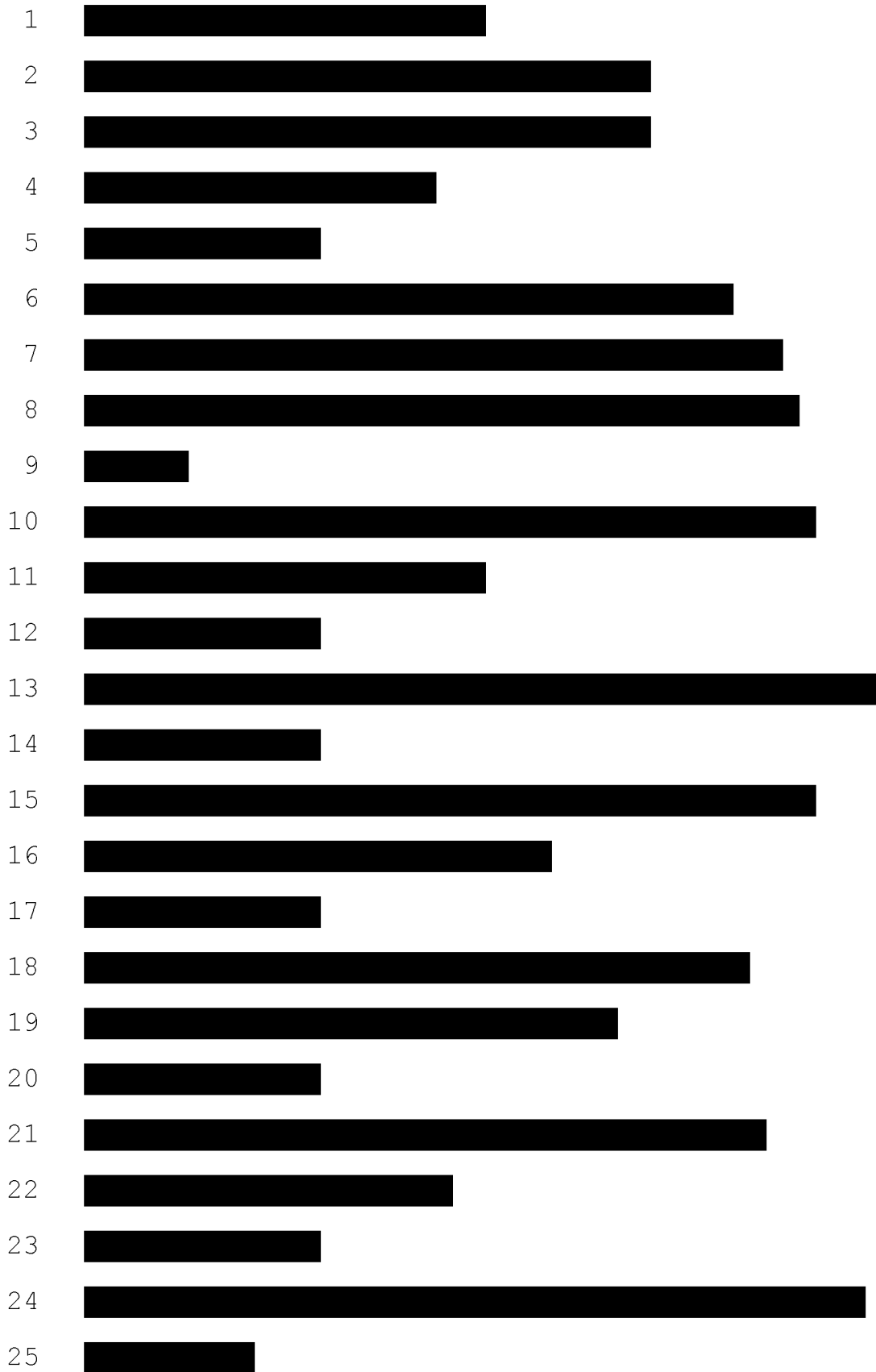
21 [REDACTED]

22 [REDACTED]

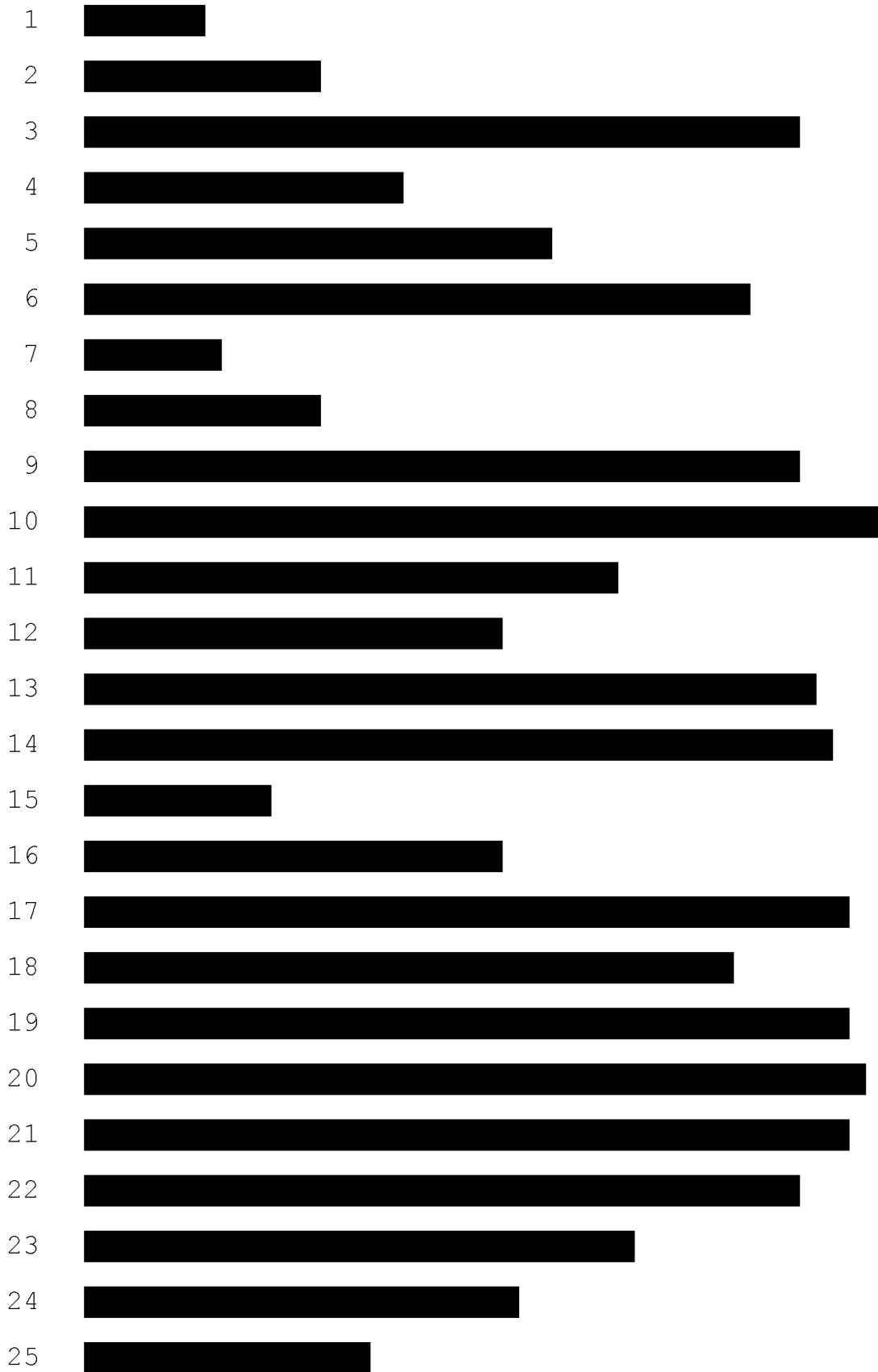
23 [REDACTED]

24 [REDACTED]

25 [REDACTED]









25 Q. What competition was Asthmatx

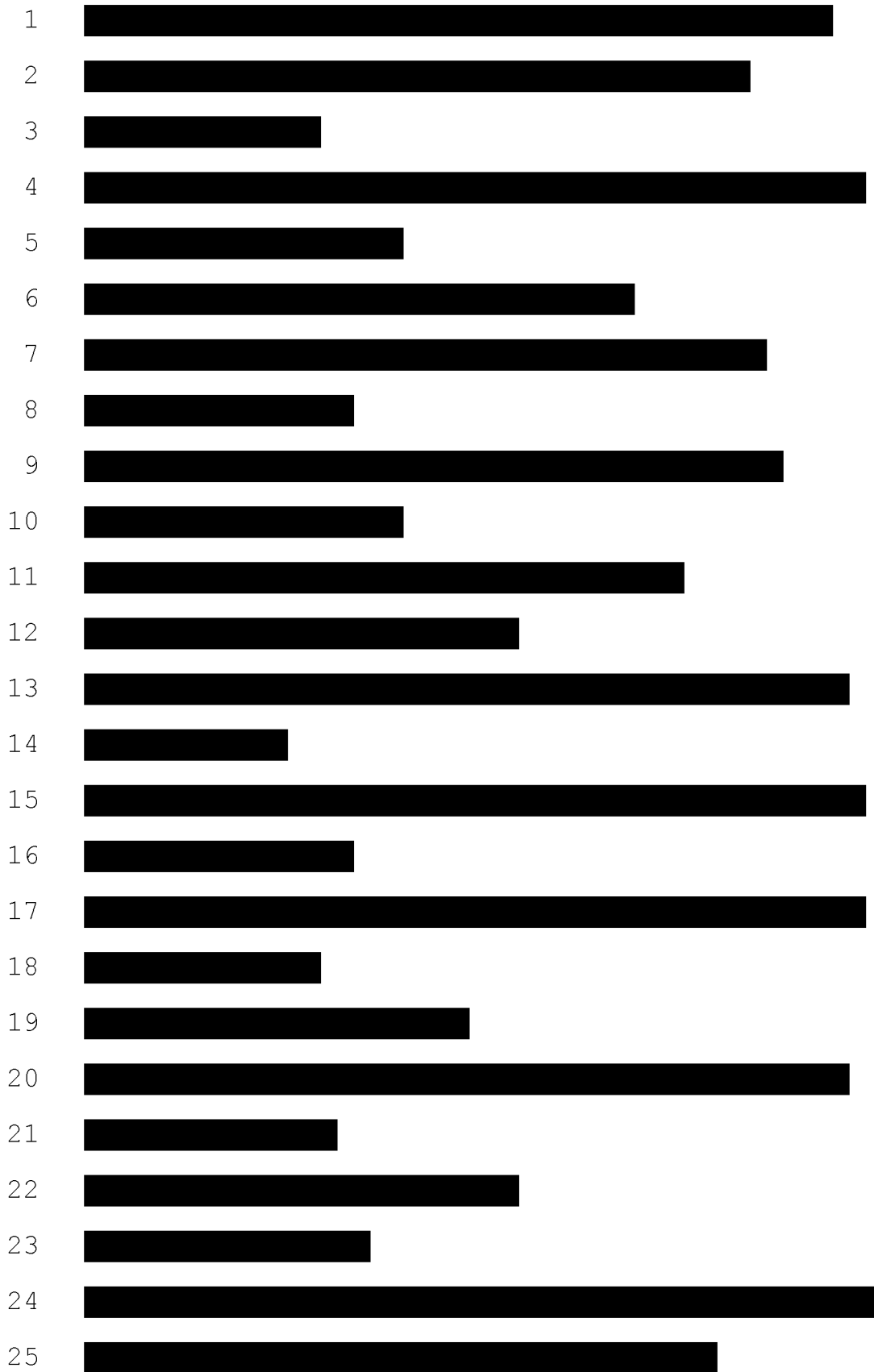
1 anticipating, if any, at this time in 2009?

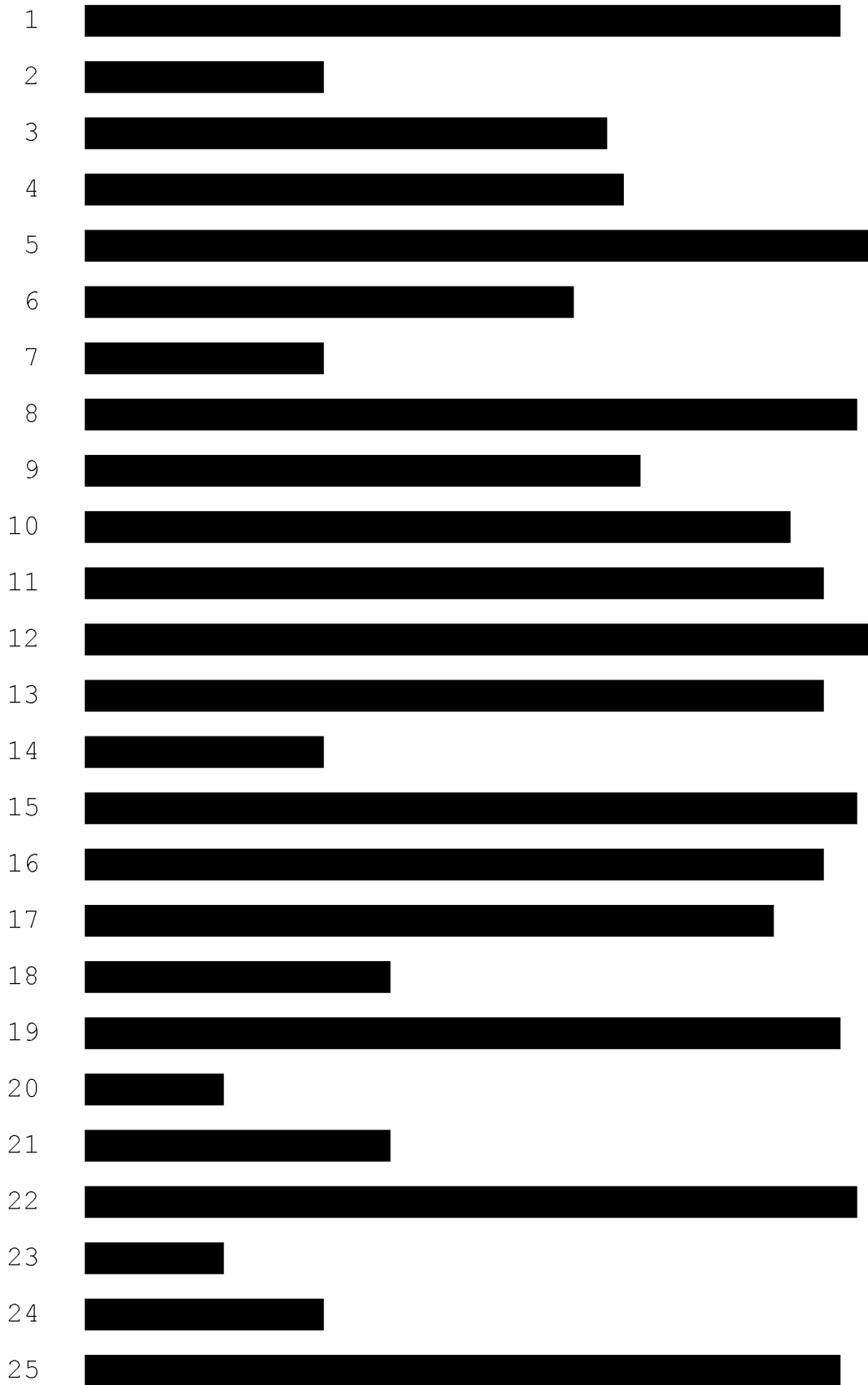
2 A. In 2009, there were no direct
3 competitors for the device for asthma, but this
4 was looking -- you know, this was a project
5 should there be competitors enter the market,
6 this is why we retained them.

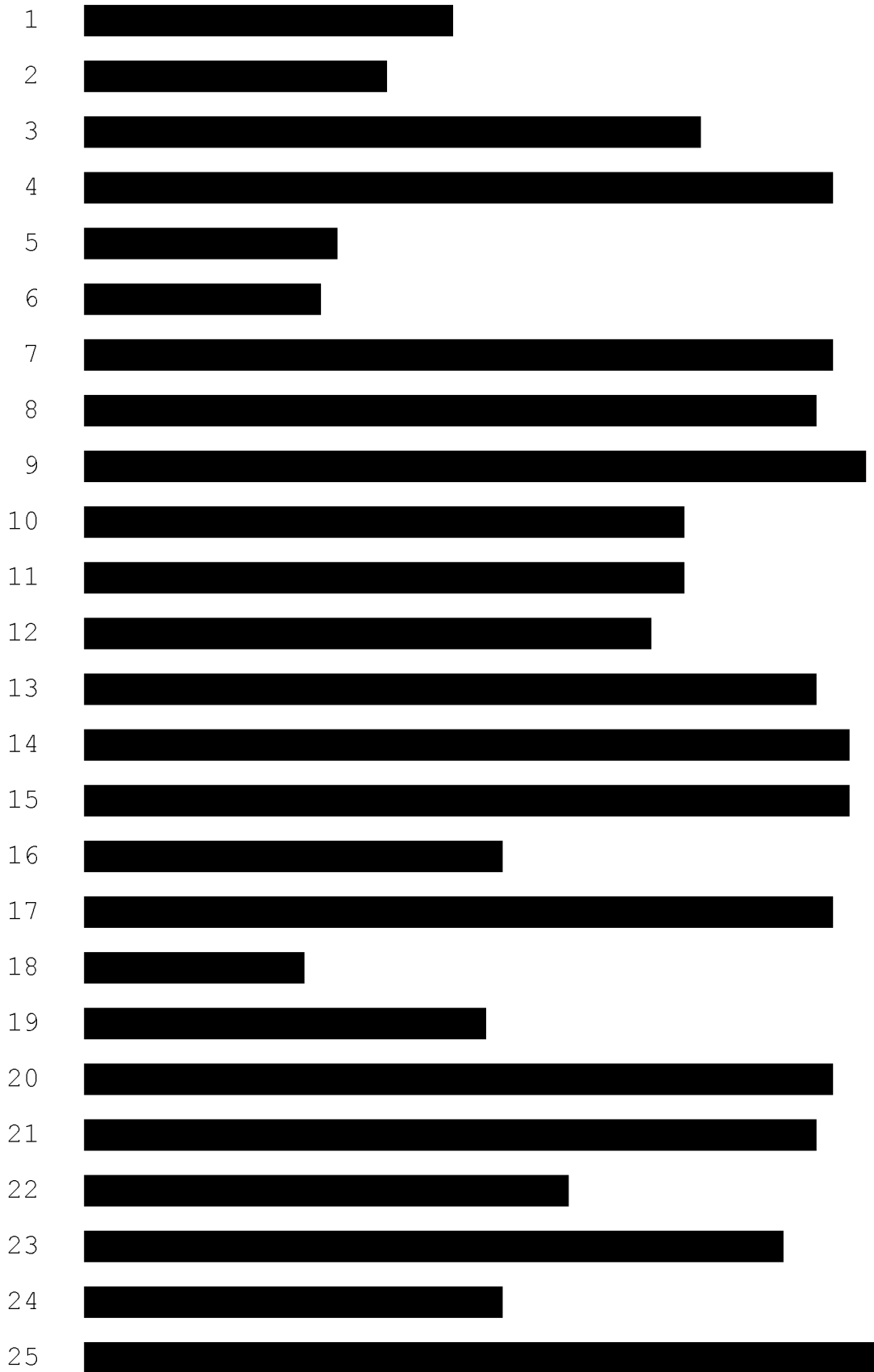
7 Q. There were no specific competitors in
8 the market at this time?

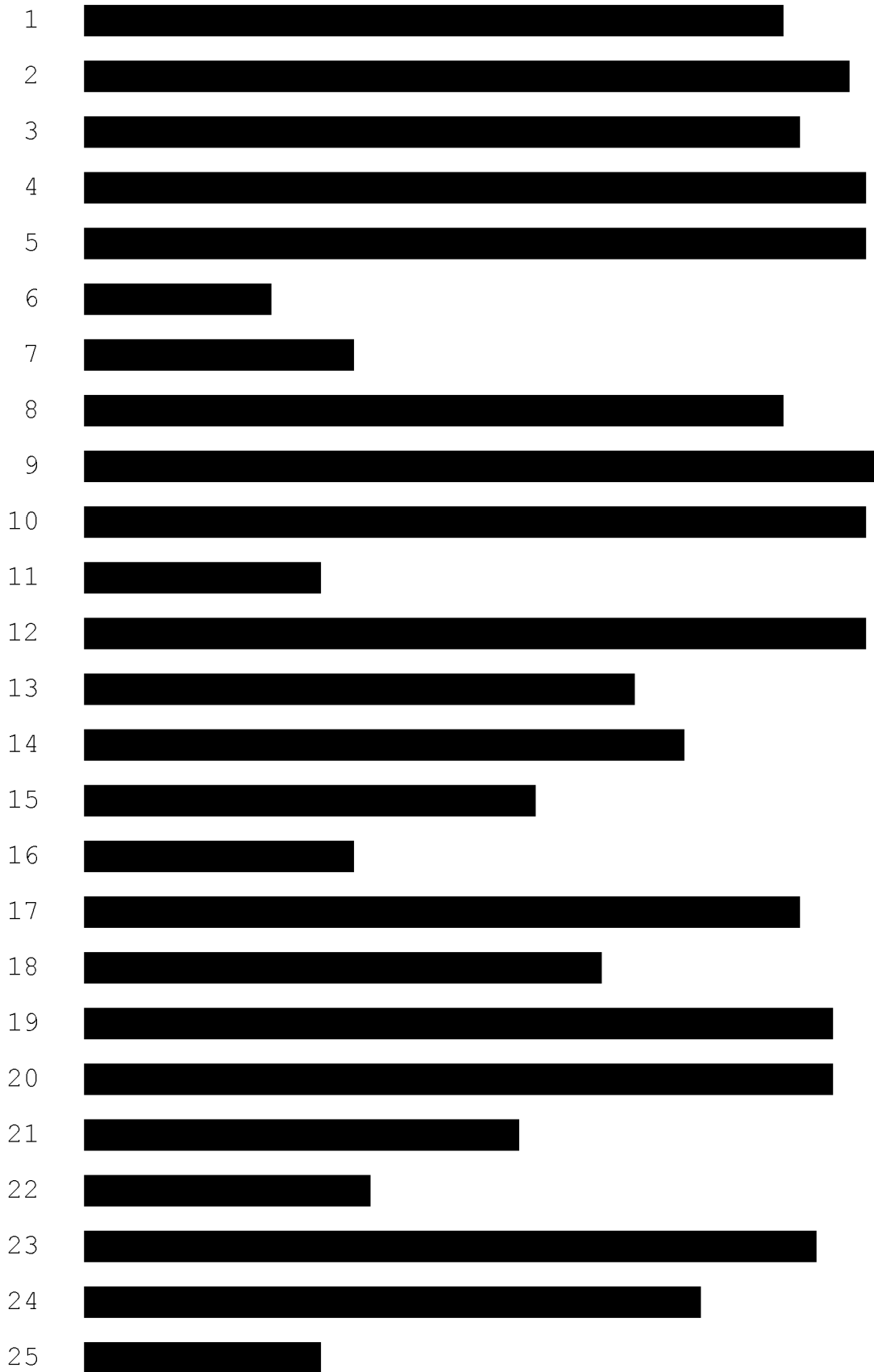
9 A. At this time, that we were aware of.

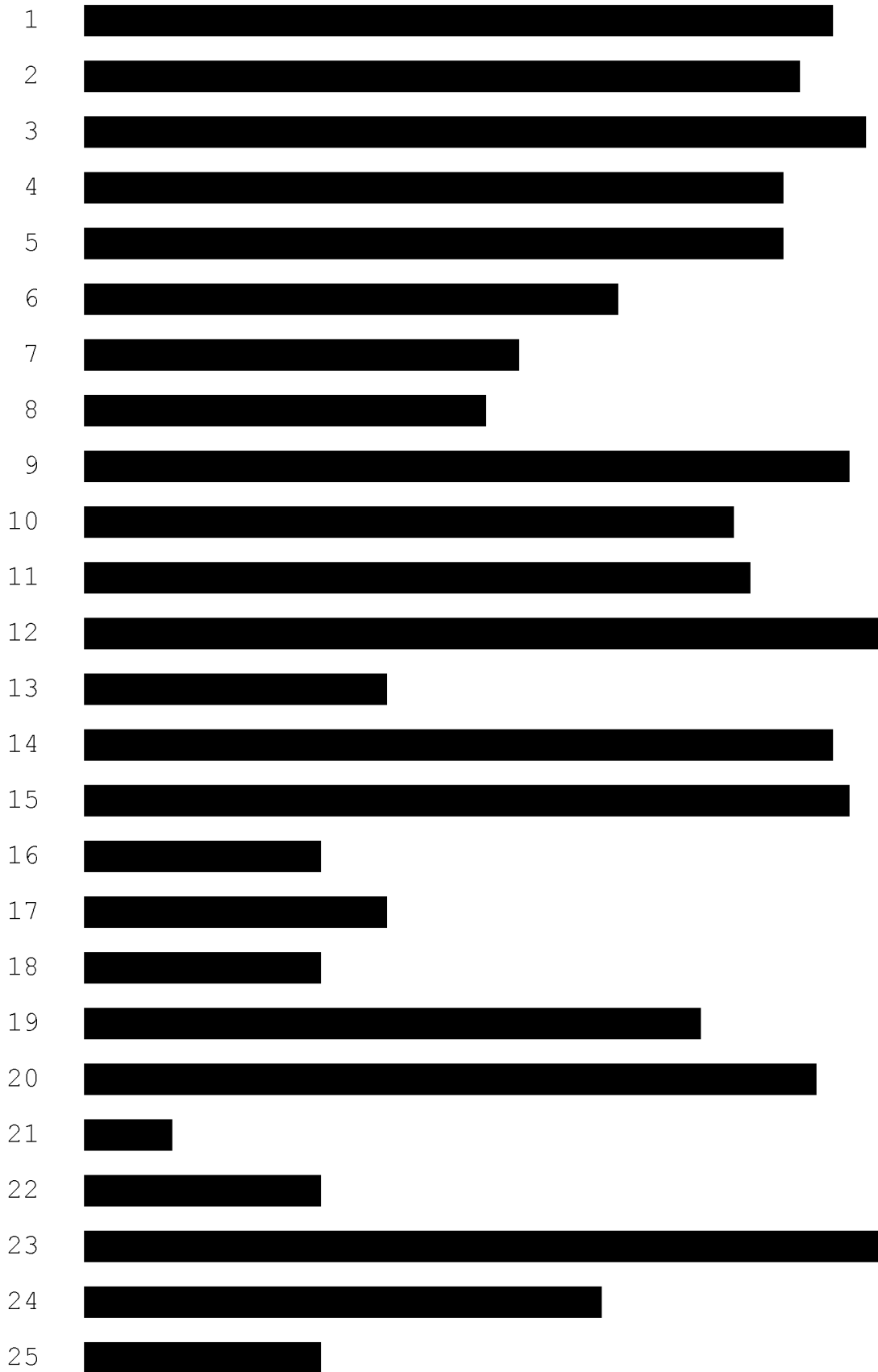
10 [REDACTED]
11 [REDACTED]
12 [REDACTED]
13 [REDACTED]
14 [REDACTED]
15 [REDACTED]
16 [REDACTED]
17 [REDACTED]
18 [REDACTED]
19 [REDACTED]
20 [REDACTED]
21 [REDACTED]
22 [REDACTED]
23 [REDACTED]
24 [REDACTED]
25 [REDACTED]

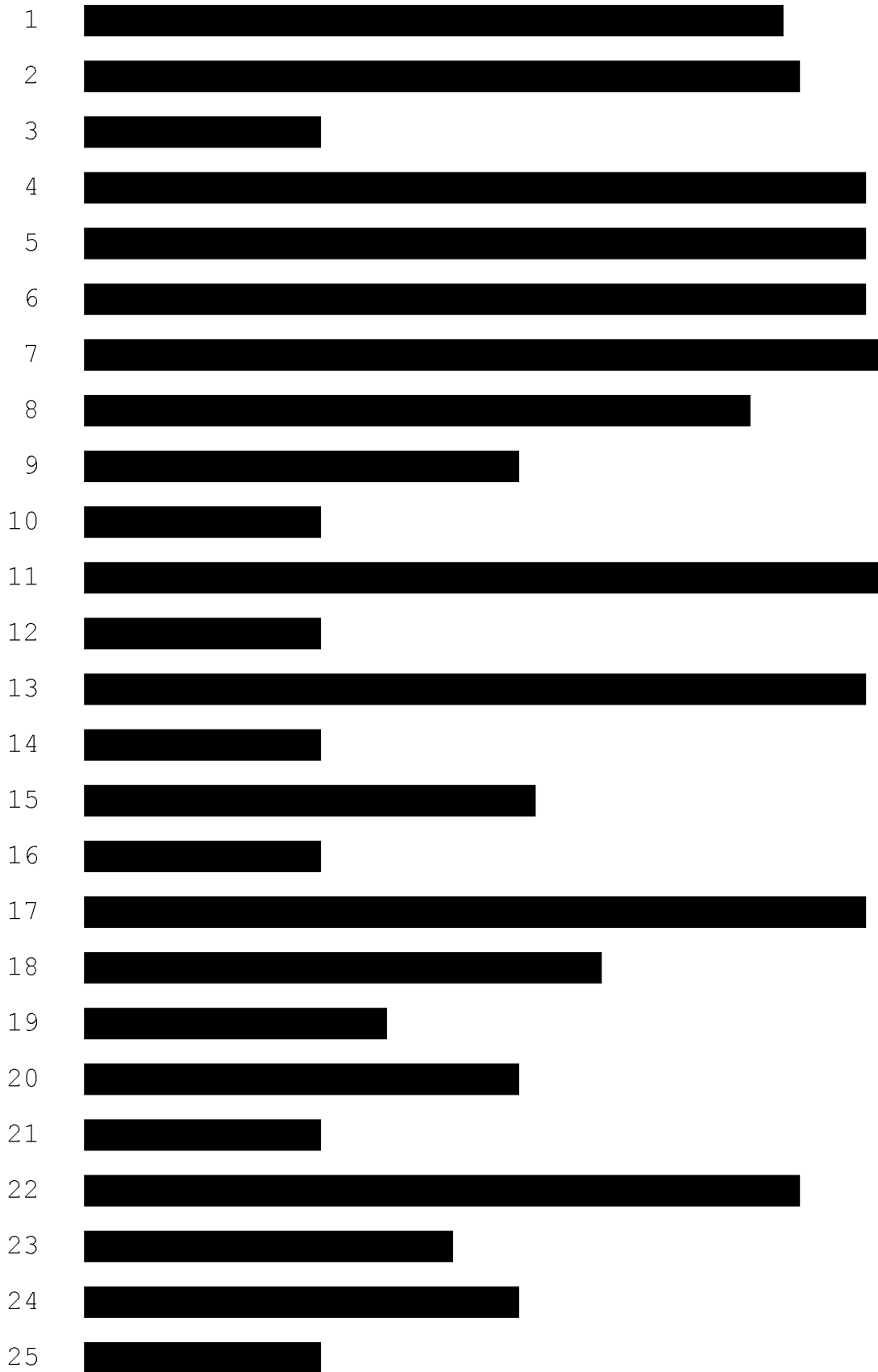


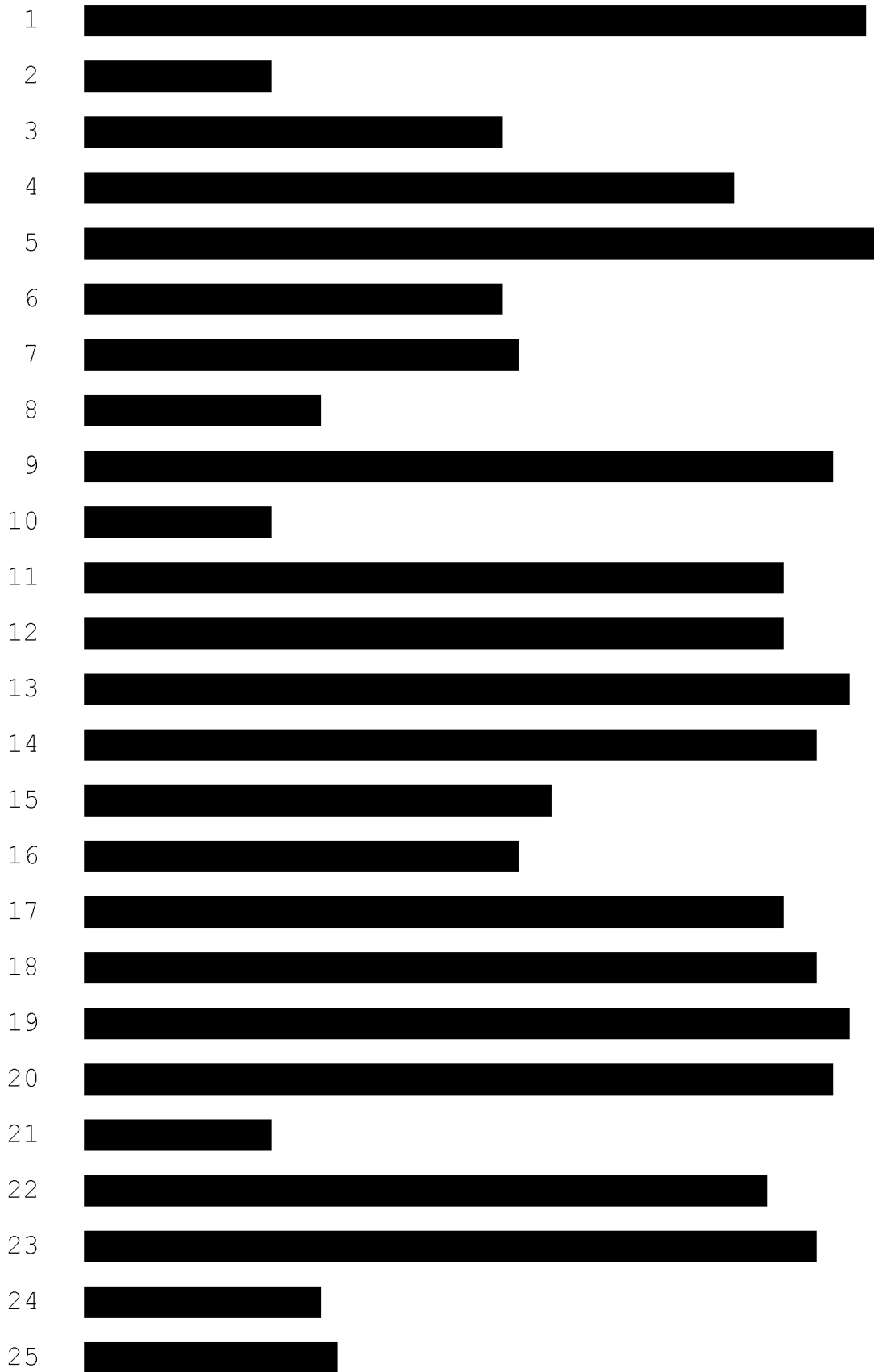


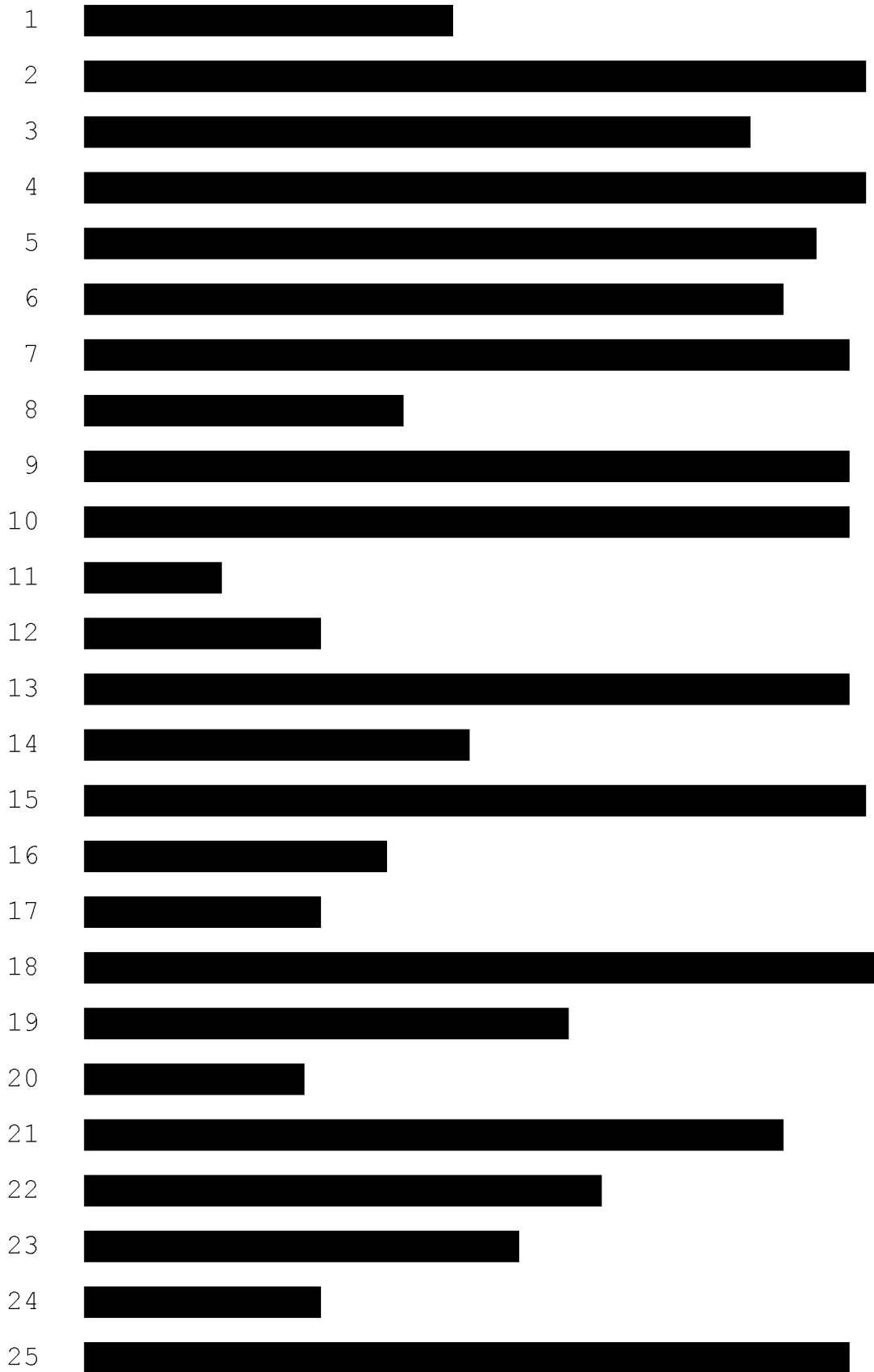




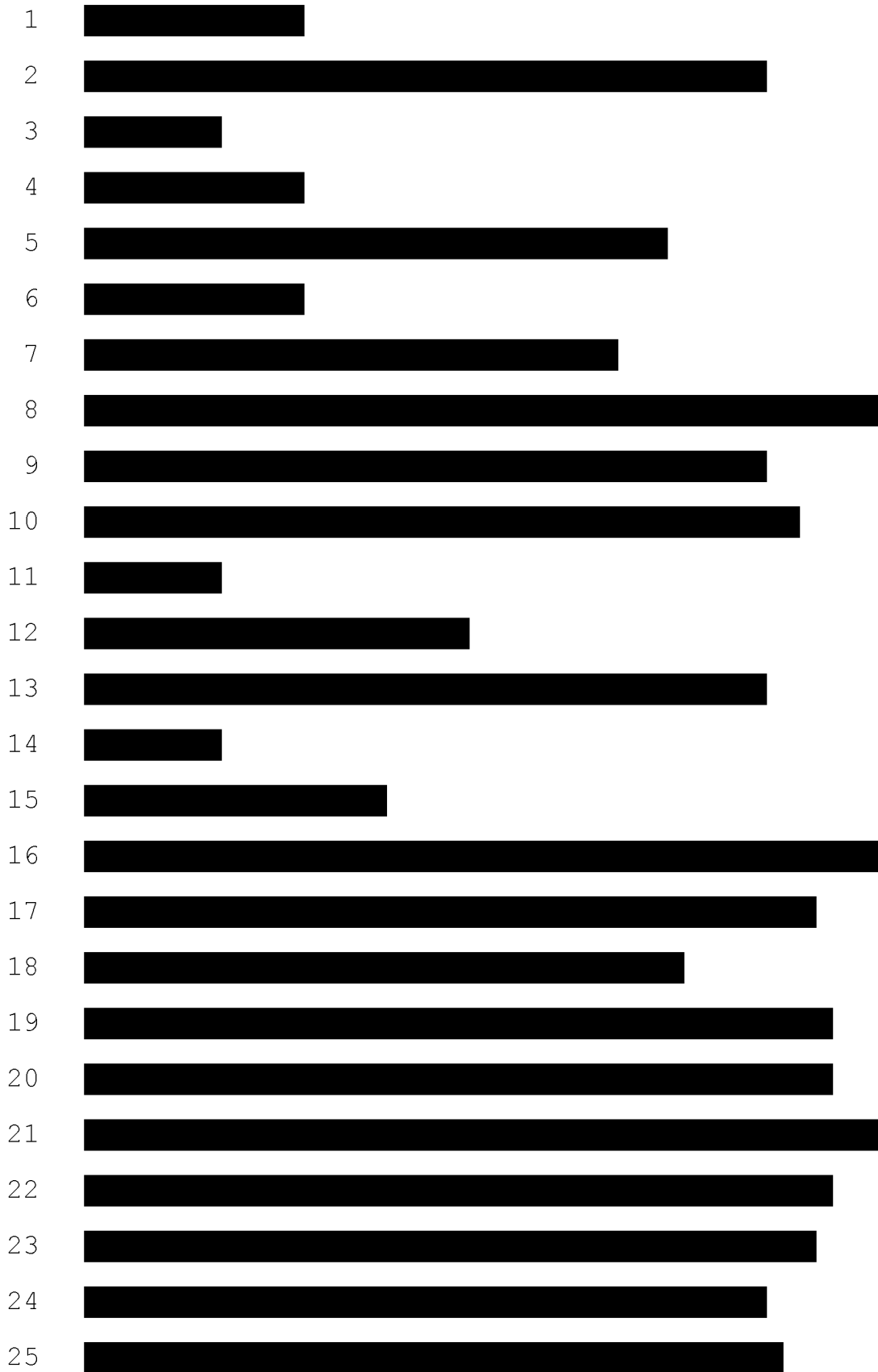












1 [REDACTED]
2 [REDACTED]
3 [REDACTED]
4 [REDACTED]
5 [REDACTED]
6 [REDACTED]
7 [REDACTED]
8 [REDACTED]
9 [REDACTED]
10 [REDACTED]
11 [REDACTED]
12 [REDACTED]
13 [REDACTED]

14 Q. The website and how it appears, has it
15 been consistent roughly since 2009?

16 A. So it went live commercially in 2010.
17 It's been fairly consistent, yes.

18 Q. Okay.

19 A. In 2010, there was the Bronchial
20 Thermoplasty web page, there was a separate
21 Asthmatx web page that was a corporate type, not
22 product-related, and that website subsequently
23 went away. And the Bronchial Thermoplasty page
24 designed for patients has continued in roughly
25 the similar focus, it's changed over the years

1 graphically and function-wise, but the basic
2 premise has been the same.

3 Q. With respect to the trade shows that
4 you've attended, or maybe not you personally,
5 but Asthmatx/Boston Scientific to promote the
6 Alair device, Holaira representatives have been
7 at those same trade shows, correct?

8 A. No.

9 Q. Never?

10 A. They have not exhibited, that I'm
11 aware of, at any trade show. They had a
12 presence, I would say, not commercial presence,
13 but a podium presence at the European
14 Respiratory meeting in 2014, September of 2014.

15 Q. And when you say "podium presence,"
16 they gave a presentation?

17 A. It was a sponsored presentation paid
18 for by Holaira during the European Respiratory
19 Society meeting.

20 Q. Okay. And is that the -- earlier you
21 provided testimony on how the Holaira system
22 works, and you said that you saw a presentation.
23 Is that where you saw the presentation?

24 A. This was the presentation, correct.

25 Q. Okay.

1 A. September, 2014.

2 Q. Let me just flip through my notes real
3 quick, and I may be done.

4 With respect to print media --

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. -- where has the print media been
7 placed?

8 A. So as far as paid advertising?

9 Q. Correct.

10 A. We've done a number of advertisements
11 that included editorial additions in inserts in
12 the USA Today that appeared in the -- one in the
13 DC market, one in the Chicago market, one in the
14 LA market. That was part of the USA Today.

15 We also did BT -- or we did Bronchial
16 Thermoplasty Alair System ads in Houston for a
17 pilot. Again, that was at the same time we did
18 the television commercial. We had newspaper ads
19 running in Houston.

20 And there's been a number of newspaper
21 ads that have been done by the hospitals that
22 Boston Scientific has not funded, but we're
23 aware of many different local advertisements
24 done by the hospitals.

25 Q. Do you have copies of those

1 advertisements?

2 A. I have copies of some of them.

3 Q. Do you have copies of the
4 advertisements that Boston Scientific has run?

5 A. We have copies within the office, yes.

6 Q. And do you have records that reflect
7 where and when those were run?

8 A. I believe so, yes.

9 MR. HANSEN: I don't believe I have
10 any further questions for you at this time.
11 Thank you.

12 A. Thank you.

13 MR. WALZ: Do you want to break for
14 lunch and then we'll come back?

15 (Whereupon, a luncheon recess was
16 taken at 12:30 p.m.)

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

1 AFTERNOON SESSION

2 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

3 BY MR. WALZ:

4 Q. So we're back, now we're going to
5 finish up with the redirect, having Dennis
6 finished with his cross-examination.

7 Can you take a look at Applicant's
8 Exhibit Number 1?

9 A. Okay.

10 Q. So you were first asked to look at
11 page Bates numbered BSC000163.

12 A. Okay.

13 Q. Are you familiar with the applicant,
14 Hitachi Medical Corporation?

15 A. No.

16 Q. You'll see here under "Additional
17 Info," it says "Filed as an intent to use"?

18 A. Mm-hmm.

19 Q. Do you have an understanding of what
20 that means?

21 A. I would assume that they're filing for
22 the trademark before they're able or ready to
23 actually use that for a product.

24 MR. HANSEN: Object as speculation.

25 BY MR. WALZ:

1 Q. And if we look underneath the "Goods
2 and Services" heading, it says "MRI Diagnostic
3 Apparatus and Parts Thereof"?

4 A. Mm-hmm.

5 Q. Does an MRI diagnostic apparatus
6 compete with the Alair System?

7 A. No.

8 Q. Would the MRI diagnostic apparatus be
9 marketed in the same channels as the Alair
10 System?

11 A. No.

12 Q. If you could look at BSC000180. So
13 that's the record you were asked to look at for
14 the mark Flair?

15 A. Flair, yes.

16 Q. Are you familiar with the
17 Correspondent listed, Monte R. Browder?

18 A. No.

19 Q. I'm sorry, that was the wrong, I meant
20 the Applicant, IVAX Research, Inc.?

21 A. No.

22 Q. Do you see under "Additional
23 Information" it's -- the heading, or it's stated
24 "Filed as intent to use"?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. Do you understand what that means?

2 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

3 A. It's not in use.

4 BY MR. WALZ:

5 Q. So you previously testified that you
6 are the vice-president of marketing?

7 A. Correct.

8 Q. And part of your job duties is to work
9 with counsel on clearing trademarks and filing
10 trademark applications?

11 MR. HANSEN: Object to form. Leading.

12 A. I would be consulted by the legal team
13 when they were doing trademark work, yes.

14 BY MR. WALZ:

15 Q. Have you ever prepared a trademark
16 application?

17 A. No.

18 Q. Have you ever assisted in the
19 preparation of a trademark application?

20 A. No.

21 Q. Under the Goods and Services heading,
22 it reads "Medical Device; Namely, a Nebulizer"?

23 A. Mm-hmm. Yes.

24 Q. Does a nebulizer compete with the
25 Alair System?

1 A. No.

2 Q. Would a nebulizer be marketed in the
3 same channels as the Alair System?

4 A. No.

5 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

6 BY MR. WALZ:

7 Q. Can you look next at BSC-182? I'm
8 sorry, let's look at BSC-00187.

9 A. Okay.

10 Q. That's for the mark Ventilair?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Are you familiar with Hamilton
13 Medical, Inc.?

14 A. No.

15 Q. Under the Goods and Services
16 description or heading, it says "Medical Air
17 Compressor for Respiratory Therapy"?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Would a medical air compressor compete
20 with the Alair System?

21 A. No.

22 Q. Would a medical air compressor be
23 marketed in the same channels as the Alair
24 System?

25 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

1 A. No.

2 BY MR. WALZ:

3 Q. Turn to BSC000189. It's for the mark
4 Circulaire?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Are you familiar with the Registrant,
7 Westmed, Inc.?

8 A. No.

9 Q. Under the heading Goods and Services,
10 it reads "Medical Apparatus, Namely, Aerosol
11 products comprising" -- typo, of "delivery
12 tubes, nebulizers and reservoir bags for use in
13 delivering pharmaceutical preparations in the
14 form of inhalants."

15 Would that medical apparatus as
16 described on Page 189 compete with the Alair
17 System?

18 A. No.

19 Q. Would that apparatus be marketed in
20 the same channels as the Alair System?

21 A. No.

22 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

23 BY MR. WALZ:

24 Q. Can you turn to BSC-192? Are you
25 familiar with the applicant, Novartis AG?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. How are you familiar with them?

3 A. They are a pharmaceutical company that
4 sell a variety of medications.

5 Q. And under the "Additional Info" it
6 reads "Filed as intent to use."

7 Do you know if the Halayr mark was
8 used in commerce?

9 A. I've not seen it, no.

10 Q. Under Goods and Services, there are
11 two descriptions, the first one is
12 "Pharmaceutical preparations for the treatment
13 of disorders of the respiratory system"?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Does a pharmaceutical preparation for
16 the treatment of disorders of the respiratory
17 system compete with the Alair System?

18 A. No.

19 Q. Does the pharmaceutical preparation
20 for the treatment of disorders of the
21 respiratory system marketed in the same channels
22 as the Alair system?

23 A. No.

24 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

25 BY MR. WALZ:

1 Q. The second description reads "Medical
2 apparatus, namely, inhalers for therapeutic use
3 sold empty."

4 Does a medical apparatus, namely
5 inhalers for therapeutic use sold empty, compete
6 with the Alair System?

7 A. No.

8 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

9 BY MR. WALZ:

10 Q. Does a medical apparatus, namely
11 inhalers for therapeutic use sold empty, is that
12 apparatus marketed in the same channels as the
13 Alair System?

14 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

15 A. No.

16 BY MR. WALZ:

17 Q. Can you turn to 195. This is, for the
18 record, for the mark Cyclair. Are you familiar
19 with the applicant, Novartis AG?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. How are you familiar with them?

22 A. A company in the pharmaceutical space.

23 Q. Do you know if the mark Cyclair was
24 ever used in commerce?

25 A. I've not seen it, no.

1 Q. And under the Goods and Services
2 heading, the description reads "Inhalers for
3 administering medications for use as an
4 immunosuppressant, sold together as a unit with
5 the medications."

6 Does that inhaler as described compete
7 with the Alair System?

8 A. No.

9 Q. Does that inhaler -- is that inhaler
10 marketed in the same channels as the Alair
11 System?

12 A. No.

13 MR. HANSEN: Foundation.

14 BY MR. WALZ:

15 Q. Turn to Page 196. It's the mark for
16 the mark Zolair, the applicant is identified as
17 Novartis AG.

18 Do you know if the Zolair mark was
19 ever used in commerce?

20 A. As written here, no.

21 Q. Is there another form in which the
22 mark would have been used?

23 A. There is a mark pronounced Xolair
24 spelled X-O-L-A-I-R.

25 Q. Okay. So --

1 A. This mark, no, it's not used.

2 Q. With that spelling it's not used?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Under the Goods and Services heading,
5 the description reads "Pharmaceutical
6 preparations for use in the treatment of" --

7 A. Rhinitis.

8 Q. -- rhinitis." Thank you.

9 Does that pharmaceutical preparation
10 compete with the Alair System?

11 A. No.

12 Q. Is that pharmaceutical preparation
13 marketed in the same channels as the Alair
14 System?

15 A. No.

16 Q. Turn to 197. This is for the mark
17 Eulair. The applicant is identified as BYK
18 Gulden Lomberg, it's a German company. Are you
19 familiar with that applicant?

20 A. No.

21 Q. The Goods and Services heading, the
22 description reads "Pharmaceutical preparations
23 for the treatment of respiratory diseases."

24 Does a pharmaceutical preparation for
25 the treatment of respiratory diseases compete

1 with the Alair System?

2 A. No.

3 Q. Would a pharmaceutical preparation for
4 the treatment of respiratory diseases be
5 marketed in the same channels as --

6 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

7 A. No.

8 BY MR. WALZ:

9 Q. -- the Alair System?

10 A. No.

11 Q. Turn to 198. The mark indicated here
12 is Vitalaire?

13 A. What page?

14 Q. I'm sorry, I have the wrong one.

15 A. Page 200?

16 Q. 200. Sorry. Are you there?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Okay. So the applicant is indicated
19 -- is identified as Liquid Air Corporation. Are
20 you familiar with Liquid Air Corporation?

21 A. No.

22 Q. Under the Good and Services heading,
23 the description reads "Liquid and high pressure
24 oxygen gas provided in cylinders for hospital,
25 clinic, and home environment use."

1 Do liquid and high pressure oxygen gas
2 -- or does that product compete with the Alair
3 System?

4 A. No.

5 Q. Would that product be marketed in the
6 same channels as the Alair System?

7 A. No.

8 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

9 BY MR. WALZ:

10 Q. If you look at Page 201, this is for
11 the mark Xolayr. The applicant is Novartis AG.
12 Under the Goods and Services heading,
13 description reads "Pharmaceutical preparation
14 for the treatment of allergic rhinitis" --

15 A. Rhinitis.

16 Q. Sorry. Thank you.

17 -- "and asthma."

18 Would a pharmaceutical preparation for
19 the treatment of rhinitis and asthma compete
20 with the Alair System?

21 A. No.

22 Q. Would a pharmaceutical preparation for
23 the treatment of rhinitis and asthma be marketed
24 in the same channel?

25 A. No.

1 Q. Look at Page 202. So this is for the
2 mark Singulair. The applicant is identified
3 as --

4 A. Merck.

5 Q. -- Merck & Co., correct?

6 Are you familiar with Merck & Co.?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. So under the Goods and Services
9 heading, it reads "Pharmaceutical preparations
10 for the treatment of respiratory disorders."

11 Would a pharmaceutical preparation for
12 the treatment of respiratory disorders compete
13 with the Alair System?

14 A. No.

15 Q. Would a pharmaceutical preparation for
16 the treatment of respiratory disorders be
17 marketed in the same channels as the Alair
18 System?

19 A. No.

20 MR. HANSEN: Object to foundation.

21 BY MR. WALZ:

22 Q. Can you turn to Page 236? This is for
23 the mark Optimair.

24 Do you see that?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. And the registrant is Mine Safety
2 Appliances Company. Are you familiar with that
3 company?

4 A. No.

5 Q. Under the Goods and Services heading
6 it reads "Respirators other than for artificial
7 respiration."

8 Would a respirator other than for
9 artificial respiration compete with the Alair
10 System?

11 A. No.

12 Q. Would a respirator other than for
13 artificial respiration be marketed in the same
14 channels as the Alair System?

15 A. No.

16 Q. And then if you can look at 248. This
17 is for the mark Vitalaire, and the applicant is
18 Liquid Air Corporation. You testified you're
19 not familiar with that company?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. Under the Goods and Services heading,
22 the description reads "Medical equipment rental
23 services, namely respirators, oxygen suppliers,
24 ventilators, nebulizers and related breathing
25 apparatus, therapy services, and retail

1 respirators, oxygen suppliers, ventilators,
2 nebulizers and related breathing apparatus store
3 services."

4 Do those services compete with the
5 Alair System?

6 A. No.

7 Q. Would those services be marketed in
8 the same channels as the Alair System?

9 A. No.

10 Q. So we spent a fair amount of time
11 going through several pages of the Boston
12 Scientific website --

13 A. Btforasthma.

14 Q. -- btforasthma.

15 A. Right.

16 Q. Why was there such an emphasis placed
17 on Bronchial Thermoplasty?

18 A. At the time of the market
19 introduction, we were creating a whole new
20 category to treat severe asthma, the first
21 device-based therapy, and so the procedure was
22 coined Bronchial Thermoplasty, that was what it
23 was called in our clinical trials, and it was
24 delivered by the Alair System, which was the
25 product name that was used in all the clinical

1 trials. And so as we introduced the product to
2 the market, we needed to create awareness for an
3 entire new category of a way to treat asthma,
4 which was a treatment, a mechanical-based
5 treatment performed with the Alair System. So
6 that the two, Bronchial Thermoplasty and the
7 Alair System, are forever linked. The procedure
8 is performed with the Alair System.

9 [REDACTED]

10 [REDACTED]

11 [REDACTED]

12 [REDACTED]

13 [REDACTED]

14 [REDACTED]

15 [REDACTED]

16 [REDACTED]

17 [REDACTED]

18 [REDACTED]

19 [REDACTED]

20 [REDACTED]

21 [REDACTED]

22 [REDACTED]

23 [REDACTED]

24 [REDACTED]

25 [REDACTED]

1	[REDACTED]
2	[REDACTED]
3	[REDACTED]
4	[REDACTED]
5	[REDACTED]
6	[REDACTED]
7	[REDACTED]
8	[REDACTED]
9	[REDACTED]
10	[REDACTED]
11	[REDACTED]
12	[REDACTED]
13	[REDACTED]
14	[REDACTED]
15	[REDACTED]
16	[REDACTED]
17	[REDACTED]
18	[REDACTED]
19	[REDACTED]
20	[REDACTED]
21	[REDACTED]
22	[REDACTED]
23	[REDACTED]
24	[REDACTED]
25	[REDACTED]

1	[REDACTED]
2	[REDACTED]
3	[REDACTED]
4	[REDACTED]
5	[REDACTED]
6	[REDACTED]
7	[REDACTED]
8	[REDACTED]
9	[REDACTED]
10	[REDACTED]
11	[REDACTED]
12	[REDACTED]
13	[REDACTED]
14	[REDACTED]
15	[REDACTED]
16	[REDACTED]
17	[REDACTED]
18	[REDACTED]
19	[REDACTED]
20	[REDACTED]
21	[REDACTED]
22	[REDACTED]
23	[REDACTED]
24	[REDACTED]
25	[REDACTED]

1 [REDACTED]
2 [REDACTED]
3 [REDACTED]
4 [REDACTED]
5 [REDACTED]
6 [REDACTED]
7 [REDACTED]

8 BY MR. WALZ:

9 Q. Is the mark Bronchial Thermoplasty
10 ever used separate and apart from Alair?

11 A. It can be, because it describes a
12 procedure. If we described the results of that
13 procedure, it will -- it has to be linked with
14 the Alair System. FDA does not approve
15 procedures, they approve devices, and so we will
16 never say that Bronchial Thermoplasty is
17 approved by the FDA. Bronchial Thermoplasty
18 delivered by the Alair System was approved by
19 the FDA.

20 Q. So just so we're clear, the Bronchial
21 Thermoplasty, when did that procedure come into
22 existence?

23 A. That was prior to my arriving at
24 Asthmatx, and I believe it was around 1999.

25 Q. And prior to 1999, Bronchial

1 Thermoplasty didn't exist?

2 A. Bronchial Thermoplasty did not exist
3 until the Alair System was developed. The two
4 are interlinked.

5 Q. If you look at Exhibit 18, and
6 Page 635.

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Are you familiar with the brands that
9 appear on this page, Xolair, Maxair, Advair,
10 Singulair --

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. -- and Aerobid?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. Does the Alair System compete with any
15 of these brands?

16 A. No.

17 Q. And is the Xolair brand a
18 pharmaceutical therapy?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Same for Maxair, Advair, Aerobid, and
21 Singulair?

22 A. Yes, all pharmaceutical.

23 Q. So you also talked about Bronchus --

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. -- and how Bronchus was split in

1 two --

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. -- where the asthma business went and
4 ultimately became Asthmatx?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And the emphysema business went and
7 spun off into a different company?

8 A. It stayed Bronchus.

9 Q. It stayed Bronchus?

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. Okay. Can you explain the difference
12 between emphysema and asthma as indications?

13 A. So emphysema is a disease that's in a
14 spectrum called COPD, which is a large spectrum
15 of pulmonary disease. At one end you have
16 chronic bronchitis, or persistent cough, that
17 could be called COPD.

18 At the other end of the spectrum is
19 emphysema, and those are patients that --
20 typically it's caused by smoking, and they have
21 a deterioration of their lungs, and they get gas
22 trapping, and they're not able to exhale
23 properly. And so without being able to exhale,
24 they can't take in a lot of air, so they have
25 lower lung function. Again, it's typically

1 caused by smoking. It's much more prevalent in
2 older population. And that's one disease state.
3 And Bronchus was focused on that.

4 Asthma is still within the respiratory
5 disease area, but more focused on the airways
6 and how the airways constrict and don't let you
7 get air in your airways. Asthma is not caused
8 by smoking.

9 Q. Okay. So would an asthma patient also
10 potentially be a COPD patient?

11 A. Yes. So an asthma patient who has a
12 clear diagnosis of asthma could also have
13 components of COPD. Again, a chronic
14 obstructive pulmonary disease is that large
15 catchall, if you will. So an asthma patient
16 could develop COPD, or a constant constriction
17 of their airway, because of having asthma for so
18 many years. So that's an asthma patient with a
19 COPD crossover. They're still considered asthma
20 patients with reduced lung function.

21 However, if the patient has asthma but
22 then develops emphysema, that's a different type
23 of patient. And the Alair System will work with
24 patients with asthma, and even a slight COPD
25 component like the chronic cough. But if the

1 patient has emphysema, that is a different
2 indication, and the Alair System would not work
3 with a patient with emphysema.

4 Q. Can you look at Opposer's Exhibit
5 Number 4? Or Applicant's. Sorry.

6 A. Is that yours?

7 Q. No.

8 A. Operator's Manual and Instructions for
9 Use?

10 Q. Right.

11 A. Okay.

12 Q. So you testified that, as you walked
13 through this document with Dennis, that there's
14 training that's required of the physician?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. And we also talked about the
17 indications that the Alair System -- how those
18 indications are identified in the operations
19 manual.

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. When the training is being conducted,
22 is it limited to asthma, or is it a little
23 broader than just focusing on asthma in terms
24 of --

25 MR. HANSEN: Sorry, go ahead. Object

1 to form.

2 A. Rephrase your question, please.

3 BY MR. WALZ:

4 Q. So on Page 664, the heading
5 "Indications for Use," there's a specific
6 reference to severe persistent asthma. And
7 again, asthma is not -- and asthma that's not
8 well controlled with inhaled --

9 A. Medications.

10 Q. -- medications. There you go.

11 When the training is being conducted
12 for these -- for the physicians, they're being
13 trained on the Alair System, is the focus of the
14 training only specifically for asthma? Is that
15 the only subject of the training?

16 MR. HANSEN: Object to form.

17 A. Yes. We are training the physician to
18 use a device to treat a patient with severe
19 asthma. That's the indication. As we go
20 through the training, we talk about other
21 comorbidities that the patient may have. And so
22 part of the training includes what not to treat,
23 or what to rule out, and teaches them about how
24 to diagnose asthma. So we're focused on asthma,
25 but we need to explain to them what might look

1 like asthma but isn't really asthma.

2 For example, vocal cord dysfunction.

3 A patient wheezes when they have vocal cord
4 dysfunction, but it's not really a problem with
5 their lungs and their airway. So we talk about
6 ruling out things that might look like asthma.
7 Vocal cord dysfunction is one.

8 You know, other -- we talk about other
9 comorbidities. Sleep apnea, uncontrolled sleep
10 apnea can also cause wheezing and shortness of
11 breath. So we kind of go through a list of what
12 they should do to clearly identify that this
13 patient does have asthma, and they've ruled out
14 other problems.

15 BY MR. WALZ:

16 Q. Would any broader topics be discussed
17 during the training?

18 A. Typically there's questions about COPD
19 and emphysema, and at that point we clearly
20 state that this is not a device intended for
21 emphysema, but that COPD and asthma cross over,
22 and if the patient has a component of COPD but
23 is clearly an asthma patient, they are an
24 appropriate candidate.

25 MR. HANSEN: I'll just object to the

1 answer as containing hearsay.

2 BY MR. WALZ:

3 Q. So you also testified that the doctors
4 will reach out to the sales representatives to
5 get additional information, or if they have an
6 issue with the product they'll call the sales
7 associate to report that to them?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. What types of issues have been
10 reported to the sales associates?

11 A. There's two types of calls that we
12 would get from a physician that would constitute
13 a complaint. One would be a product-related
14 complaint; the foot pedal switch came apart, the
15 catheter was kinked, or kinked during use, or
16 was kinked when they took it out of the package.
17 So a product-related complaint we would -- they
18 would call the rep, and the rep would call it
19 into our complaints group.

20 There also is an adverse event type of
21 complaint, that if a patient was -- had a severe
22 asthma attack after the procedure that required
23 them to be hospitalized, the physician may call
24 and report that there was an adverse event, the
25 patient was hospitalized. And we -- that is a

1 precaution that is a known result of the
2 procedure, and we train to that, that a patient
3 could have an adverse event and it could cause a
4 hospitalization. That is a big part of our
5 training. So we encourage physicians that if
6 that should happen, they should let us know, and
7 then we report it. And that's part of the FDA
8 reporting structure. So product issues, or
9 product function complaints, as well as adverse
10 events are both reported by physicians.

11 Q. Would a physician provide you with any
12 comments other than product-related?

13 A. Physicians often ask about certain
14 patients, and would they be appropriate for this
15 procedure. Many of our -- many types of
16 patients that we don't have data, that we did
17 not treat in our clinical trial, physicians may
18 ask would this be patient be appropriate, and at
19 that point we often refer them to a third party
20 physician experienced in the procedure to give
21 medical advice.

22 Q. What type of comments from physicians
23 have you received on the market in terms of what
24 treatments are available and what products are
25 available in the market?

1 A. So we get comments from physicians
2 usually asking about who is the appropriate
3 patient for this procedure, how does -- you
4 know, what is the success rate, or what are the
5 known benefits of this versus, you know, other
6 possible medications that might treat asthma.

7 When there's a new publication about
8 Bronchial Thermoplasty, we will get questions
9 from physicians. There are publications both
10 pro and con about Bronchial Thermoplasty, and
11 there have been, you know, physicians that have
12 taken a negative position on their belief of the
13 benefit of BT, and we get questions about those
14 publications.

15 There was a recent publication about
16 the Holaira device, and we got questions from
17 physicians in China and in Europe asking what is
18 this device, and when they read the description
19 asking what is this and, you know, how does this
20 differ from Bronchial Thermoplasty. So people
21 were asking about, you know, that device, we did
22 get questions recently.

23 Q. So were the questions directed at -- I
24 guess what was the -- were the questions
25 directed at an association with Boston

1 Scientific?

2 MR. HANSEN: Object to the request for
3 hearsay.

4 A. The questions came from customers,
5 physicians that use our product today, and they
6 questioned their local representative and
7 asked -- and brought up this article, and talked
8 about targeted long denervation for the
9 treatment of emphysema, and said, you know, how
10 is this different than what we're doing with the
11 Alair System for asthma.

12 BY MR. WALZ:

13 Q. Just going back to the website, the
14 btforasthma website, you had indicated there are
15 a number of links that are also on that website.

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. And clicking on some of those links --
18 well, let's look at a specific one. If you can
19 look at Applicant's Exhibit 15.

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. So in the left drop-down categories,
22 there's a specific reference to the Alair
23 System.

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. So that's an example of a link you

1 could click on that would take you to another
2 page?

3 A. Yes, description of the Alair System,
4 more detailed of what the system components are.

5 Q. So what's the purpose of the
6 btforasthma website?

7 A. The website was primarily designed for
8 patient and physician awareness of a new
9 treatment for asthma, so Bronchial Thermoplasty
10 being the broad category of an innovative new
11 procedure, first non-medication procedure for
12 asthma, and it's performed with the Alair
13 System, so the two are linked. And Bronchial
14 Thermoplasty, being the procedure, was the
15 easier way to kind of orient the different
16 categories. And within each category, we get
17 into more detail about how the procedure is
18 performed, what the device is like, what the
19 trials were, how were the trials performed, how
20 was the device used in the trials. And so Alair
21 is woven throughout the entire website.

22 MR. WALZ: I have no further
23 questions.

24 MR. HANSEN: I have no further
25 questions.

(Whereupon, the deposition was
concluded at 1:48 p.m.)

1 COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS)

2 SUFFOLK, SS.)

3 I, MAUREEN O'CONNOR POLLARD, RMR, CLR,
4 and Notary Public in and for the Commonwealth of
5 Massachusetts, do certify that on the 9th day of
6 April, 2015, at 8:50 o'clock, the person
7 above-named was duly sworn to testify to the
8 truth of their knowledge, and examined, and such
9 examination reduced to typewriting under my
10 direction, and is a true record of the testimony
11 given by the witness. I further certify that I
12 am neither attorney, related or employed by any
13 of the parties to this action, and that I am not
14 a relative or employee of any attorney employed
15 by the parties hereto, or financially interested
16 in the action.

17 In witness whereof, I have hereunto
18 set my hand this 20th day of April, 2015.

19

20



21

MAUREEN O'CONNOR POLLARD, NOTARY PUBLIC

22

Realtime Systems Administrator

23

CSR #149108

24

25

1 INSTRUCTIONS TO WITNESS

2
3 Please read your deposition over
4 carefully and make any necessary corrections.
5 You should state the reason in the appropriate
6 space on the errata sheet for any corrections
7 that are made.

8 After doing so, please sign the
9 errata sheet and date it. It will be attached
10 to your deposition.

11 It is imperative that you return
12 the original errata sheet to the deposing
13 attorney within thirty (30) days of receipt of
14 the deposition transcript by you. If you fail
15 to do so, the deposition transcript may be
16 deemed to be accurate and may be used in court.

17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

1

E R R A T A

2

3

PAGE LINE CHANGE

4

4713expense changed to experience

5

REASON:

used wrong word

6

10213Alair changed to Holaira

7

REASON:

used wrong word

8

9

REASON:

10

11

REASON:

12

13

REASON:

14

15

REASON:

16

17

REASON:

18

19

REASON:

20

21

REASON:

22

23

REASON:

24

25

Page 194

ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF DEPONENT

I, Karen M. Passafaro, do
Hereby certify that I have read the foregoing
pages, and that the same is a correct
transcription of the answers given by me to the
questions therein propounded, except for the
corrections or changes in form or substance, if
any, noted in the attached Errata Sheet.

Karen M. Passafaro 5/19/15
KAREN M. PASSAFARO DATE

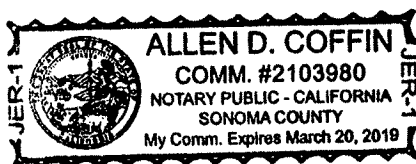
Subscribed and sworn
To before me this

19th day of MAY, 2015.

My commission expires: MARCH 20, 2019

Allen D. Coffin

Notary Public



LAWYER'S NOTES

2	PAGE	LINE	
3	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	_____	_____
5	_____	_____	_____
6	_____	_____	_____
7	_____	_____	_____
8	_____	_____	_____
9	_____	_____	_____
10	_____	_____	_____
11	_____	_____	_____
12	_____	_____	_____
13	_____	_____	_____
14	_____	_____	_____
15	_____	_____	_____
16	_____	_____	_____
17	_____	_____	_____
18	_____	_____	_____
19	_____	_____	_____
20	_____	_____	_____
21	_____	_____	_____
22	_____	_____	_____
23	_____	_____	_____
24	_____	_____	_____
25	_____	_____	_____

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
BEFORE THE TRADEMARK TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

Alere Medical Incorporated,

Petitioner,

v.

Asthmatx, Inc.,

Respondent.

Cancellation No.

Registration Nos.

2856168

3380080

PETITION FOR CANCELLATION

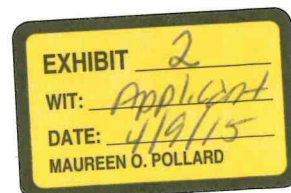
Alere Medical Incorporated, a California corporation having a place of business at 595 Double Eagle Court, Suite 1000, Reno, Nevada 89521 (hereinafter "Petitioner"), believes that it will be damaged by Registration Nos. 2856168 and 3380080 for the mark ALAIR, and hereby petitions to cancel same.

The grounds for this petition are as follows:

1. Respondent is the owner of Registration No. 2856168 of the mark ALAIR for "medical therapeutic devices for use in the treatment of pulmonary diseases, namely, catheters, probes, generators, bronchoscopes, and electrodes" in International Class 10, which issued on June 22, 2004.

2. Respondent is the owner of Registration No. 3380080 of the mark ALAIR for "Training and teaching in the field of surgery and treatment of pulmonary diseases, namely training and teaching in the use and operation of medical devices for bronchial surgery or

B3639096.1



BSC000735

treatment, and distribution of course materials, namely printed materials and electronic media, in connection therewith” in International Class 41, which issued on February 12, 2008.

3. Petitioner is the owner of Registration No. 2659940 of the mark ALERE for “medical monitoring apparatus used to monitor and communicate data such as weight, blood pressure, blood glucose levels, other blood chemistry data, heart rate, EKG, coagulation time, peak flow, or other measurements of respiratory function in patients with chronic diseases such as asthma, diabetes, obesity, chronic hypertension, chronic renal disease and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease” in International Class 10, which issued on December 10, 2002.

4. Petitioner is the owner of Registration No. 3530814 of the mark ALERE for “health care services” in International Class 44, which issued on November 11, 2008.

5. Pursuant to Trademark Rule 2.122(d), print-outs from the USPTO TARR, TESS, and Assignment databases for Petitioner’s Registrations Nos. 2659940 and 3530814 are attached to this Petition for Cancellation.

6. Petitioner has widely used, promoted and advertised its mark ALERE in connection with the goods and services specified in Paragraphs 3 and 4, *supra*.

7. Petitioner has continuously used its ALERE mark in commerce since prior to the original filing dates of Registrations Nos. 2856168 and 3380080, and since prior to the dates of first use in commerce claimed in connection with Registrations Nos. 2856168 and 3380080.

8. Petitioner has invested significant time, money, and effort in the promotion and use of its mark ALERE. As a result, Petitioner has built up an extensive reputation and goodwill in the ALERE mark in relation to Petitioner's goods and services.

9. The ALAIR mark that is the subject of Registrations Nos. 2856168 and 3380080 is confusingly similar to Petitioner's mark ALAIR.


10. The goods and services set forth in Registrations Nos. 2856168 and 3380080 are similar and/or related to the goods and services with which Petitioner has used and is using its ALERE mark.

11. Respondent's use of the mark ALAIR for the goods and services identified in Registrations Nos. 2856168 and 3380080 is likely to cause confusion, mistake or deception as to the source of Respondent's goods and services, all to Petitioner's damage. Furthermore, customers or potential customers are likely to believe that Respondent's goods and services are sponsored or approved by or affiliated with Petitioner when that is not the case. Any dissatisfaction with Respondent's goods or services will reflect upon and damage the goodwill and reputation embodied in Petitioner's ALERE mark.

WHEREFORE, Petitioner prays that Registrations Nos. 2856168 and 3380080 be canceled and that this Petition for Cancellation be sustained. The filing fee for this Petition for Cancellation in the amount of \$600.00 (\$300.00 per class) is enclosed.

Respectfully submitted,

Alere Medical Incorporated


Joshua S. Jarvis
Foley Hoag LLP
155 Seaport Boulevard
Boston, MA 02210
(617) 832-1000

Dated: June 18, 2009

CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE

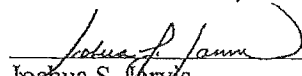
I hereby certify that a true copy of the Petition for Cancellation and corresponding USPTO TARR, TESS, and Assignment database printouts were served upon Respondent:

Asthmatx Inc.
1340 Space Park Way
Mountain View, CA 94043

and the correspondent of record associated with Registration Nos. 2856168 and 3380080:

E. Lynn Perry
Perry IP Group A Law Corporation
4 Embarcadero Center, 39th Floor
San Francisco, CA 94111

by FedEx this date of June 18, 2009.



Joshua S. Jarvis

1
2 **IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**
3 **BEFORE THE TRADEMARK TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD**

4 ALERE MEDICAL CORPORATION,) Cancellation No. 92051129
5)
6 Petitioner,)
7) Mark: ALAIR
8 v.) Reg. Nos. 2856168 and 3380080
9)
10 ASTHMATX, INC.,)
11)
12 Respondent.)
13)

EXHIBIT 3
WIT: App/Can
DATE: 4/9/15
MAUREEN O. POLLARD

14 ANSWER

15
16 ASTHMATX, INC., Respondent, hereby answers the Petition to Cancel filed by ALERE
17 MEDICAL CORPORATION, Petitioner, as follows. Respondent is without sufficient knowledge
18 or information concerning the corporate status and place of business of Petitioner, and on that
19 basis denies the same, and denies that Petitioner is or would be damaged by registration of ALAIR
20 Reg. Nos. 2856168 and 3380080 (the "Registrations"). Further answering, Respondent alleges:

21 1. Respondent admits the allegations in paragraph 1 of the Petition.
22 2. Respondent admits the allegations in paragraph 2 of the Petition.
23 3. Respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to
24 the truth or falsity of the allegations contained in paragraph 3 of the Petition, and on that basis
25 denies the same.

26 4. Respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to
27 the truth or falsity of the allegations contained in paragraph 4 of the Petition, and on that basis
28 denies the same.

5. Respondent admits that copies of print-outs from the USPTO TARR, TESS, and
Assignment databases for Reg. Nos. 2659940 and 3530814 are attached to the Petition.
Respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to the truth or

1 falsity of the remaining allegations contained in paragraph 5 of the Petition, and on that basis
2 denies the same.

3 6. Respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to
4 the truth or falsity of the allegations contained in paragraph 6 of the Petition, and on that basis
5 denies the same.

6 7. Respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to
7 the truth or falsity of the allegations contained in paragraph 8 of the Petition, and on that basis
8 denies the same.

9 8. Respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to
10 the truth or falsity of the allegations contained in paragraph 8 of the Petition, and on that basis
11 denies the same.

12 9. Respondent denies the allegations contained in paragraph 9 of the Petition.

13 10. Respondent denies the allegations contained in paragraph 10 of the Petition.

14 11. Respondent denies the allegations contained in paragraph 11 of the Petition.

15 **AFFIRMATIVE DEFENSES**

16 1. The Petition fails to state a claim upon which relief can be granted.

17 2. The marks themselves and the goods and services to which they are applied are
18 sufficiently different that there is no likelihood of confusion.
19

20 3. There is no likelihood of confusion because the parties' marks have co-existed for
21 several years with no actual confusion.

22 4. On information and belief, Respondent used its mark ALAIR in connection with
23 medical devices and related services in relation to pulmonary diseases prior to any such use by
24 Petitioner, so Respondent has priority over Petitioner. Therefore, the Petition fails due to lack of
25 superior rights.
26

27 5. Petitioner lacks standing because there is no basis for Petitioner's belief that it is
28 damaged by Respondent's registrations.

-2-

ANSWER

Attorney Docket No. 6067-4
Cancellation No. 92051129

BSC000729

1 6. Petitioner is estopped from prevailing in this action by the equitable defense of
2 laches.

3 7. Petitioner is estopped from prevailing in this action by the equitable defense of
4 acquiescence.
5

6 8. Petitioner is estopped from prevailing in this action by the equitable defense of
7 unclean hands in that Petitioner's sole purpose in filing the Petition is to stop Respondent's Reg.
8 No. 2856168 from becoming incontestable and to use the Petition as leverage concerning non-U.S.
9 matters.

10 WHEREFORE, Respondent prays that the Cancellation be dismissed with prejudice.

11 Respectfully submitted,

12 
13
14

15 E. Lynn Perry
16 Attorneys for Respondent
 ASTHMATX, INC.

17 Perry IP Group ALC
18 4 Embarcadero Center
19 39th Floor
20 San Francisco, CA 94111
 415-398-6300 (tel.)
 415-398-6306 (fax)

1
2
3 CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE BY MAIL

4 I am over the age of 18 and not a party to the within action. I am employed in the County
5 of San Francisco, State of California by Perry IP Group ALC. My business address is 4
6 Embarcadero Center, 39th Floor, San Francisco, California 94111.

7 On the date indicated below, I served the following entitled document:

8 **ANSWER**

9 by placing a true and correct copy thereof in a sealed envelope addressed as follows:
10

11 Charles E. Weinstein, Esq.
12 Foley Hoag LLP
13 Seaport West
14 155 Seaport Boulevard
15 Boston, MA 02210-2600

16 I am readily familiar with the firm's business practice for collection and processing of
17 correspondence for mailing with the United States Postal Service. On this day, I placed for
18 collection and processing the above document to be deposited with the United States Postal
19 Service in the ordinary course of business. And in the ordinary course of the firm's business, such
20 correspondence is deposited with the United States Postal Service the same day that it is collected.

21 I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the
22 foregoing is true and correct.

23 Executed on September 1, 2009 at San Francisco, California.

24 

25
26
27 E. Lynn Perry

28 -4-

ANSWER

Attorney Docket No. 6067-4
Cancellation No. 92051129

BSC000731

Boston
Scientific

ALAIR™

Bronchial Thermoplasty Catheter

Directions for Use

3




EXHIBIT 4
WIT: Applicant
DATE: 4/9/19
MAUREEN O. POLLARD

Black (K) ΔE ≤ 5.0

BSC000662

Boston Scientific (Master Brand DFU Template 8in x 8in Global, 90106041AL), DFU, MB, Alair Catheter, Canada/Mexico, 90723943-01C

TABLE OF CONTENTS

WARNING	3
ALAIR™ BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY SYSTEM DESCRIPTION	3
Figure 1. The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System	3
INDICATION FOR USE	3
BRONCHOSCOPE REQUIREMENTS	3
MECHANISM OF ACTION	3
CONTRAINDICATIONS 	4
WARNINGS 	4
PRECAUTIONS 	4
CLINICAL STUDIES	5
Figure 2: Severe Exacerbations during the Post-Treatment Phase	6
Figure 3: Safety Endpoints demonstrating Effectiveness (ITT Population)	7
ADVERSE EVENTS IN PIVOTAL STUDY	7
HOW SUPPLIED	8
OPERATIONAL INSTRUCTIONS	8
Alair Catheter Inspection and Preparation	8
Figure 4. Alair Catheter in Tray	9
Figure 5. Alair Catheter with its four Marker Bands, spaced 5 mm apart	9
Figure 6: Alair Catheter Electrode Array Expanded	9
Figure 7: Alair Catheter Electrode Array Relaxed	9
Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System Set-up and Operation	9
Figure 8: Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 set up	9
Patient Preparation	9
Figure 9: Bronchoscope navigation into patient's airways	10
Alair Catheter Use	10
Figure 10: Alair Catheter introduced through working channel of bronchoscope	10
Figure 11: Alair Catheter in the Airway	11
Figure 12: Contiguous Placement and Activation	11
Post Procedure Care	11
MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING	12
REFERENCES	12
NO IMPLIED LICENSE	12
WARRANTY	12

ALAIR™

Bronchial Thermoplasty Catheter

Rx ONLY

Caution: Federal Law (USA) restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician.



FOR PROFESSIONAL USE ONLY

The Alair Catheter must be used by a physician who has training and experience in performing bronchoscopic procedures.

WARNING

Contents supplied STERILE using a Radiation process. Do not use if sterile barrier is damaged. If damage is found, call your Boston Scientific Corporation (BSC) representative.

For single use only. Do not reuse, reprocess or resterilize. Reuse, reprocessing or resterilization may compromise the structural integrity of the device and/or lead to device failure which, in turn, may result in patient injury, illness or death. Reuse, reprocessing or resterilization may also create a risk of contamination of the device and/or cause patient infection or cross-infection, including, but not limited to, the transmission of infectious disease(s) from one patient to another. Contamination of the device may lead to injury, illness or death of the patient.

After use, dispose of product and packaging in accordance with hospital, administrative and/or local government policy.

ALAIR BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

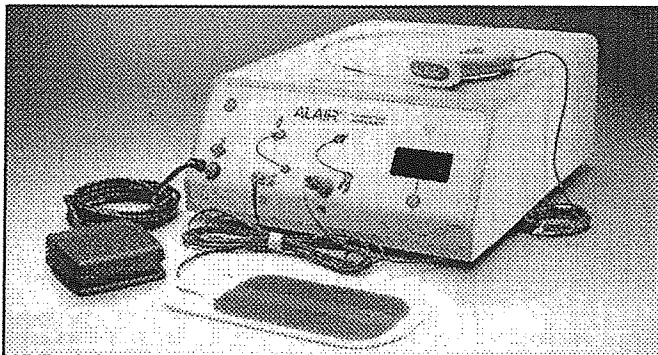


Figure 1. The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System

The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System ("Alair System"), manufactured by Boston Scientific Corporation, consists of the Alair Catheter and the Alair Controller System, as described below:

Alair Catheter: The Alair Catheter Model ATS 2-5 ("Catheter") is provided sterile and is a SINGLE-USE ONLY, disposable device. The Catheter delivers energy from the Controller to the desired site in the airway and relays temperature feedback to the Controller. The Alair Catheter Model ATS 2-5 is designed to be used with the Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200.

Alair Controller System

Alair Radiofrequency (RF) Controller: The Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 ("Controller") is designed to provide controlled delivery of RF energy to the Alair Catheter. Energy from the Controller is delivered to the Catheter through the electrical cable attached to the proximal end of the Catheter handle. Actual power delivered is automatically modulated by the Controller based on temperature control algorithms. The Controller delivers low-power, temperature controlled RF energy to the airway at a predetermined temperature setting for a predetermined time period. The Controller incorporates hardware and software features that limit current, voltage, power, energy, time and temperature during each application of RF energy. The Controller is not intended to come in contact with the patient and therefore is not provided as a sterile device. For information on the installation, use, and other technical specifications, please read the Alair Radiofrequency Controller Operator's Manual for Model ATS 200.

Footswitch: The Controller is used with a footswitch that allows the operator to start and stop the delivery of RF energy. The Controller is designed to be used with the compatible footswitch provided by BSC. The footswitch is not intended to come into contact with the patient and therefore is not provided as a sterile device.

Patient Return Electrode: The Controller is designed to be used with a gel-type patient return electrode that is compliant with the applicable portions of IEC 60601-2-2 and/or CE marked. The patient return electrode is used to complete the return path for the electrical current. Use only patient return electrodes indicated for use with adults or patients weighing more than 15 kg (33 lbs). Examples of acceptable patient return electrodes include Valleylab™ E7506 and ConMed™ 51-7310. Follow the directions for use (DFU) packaged with the patient return electrode.

Contents

One (1) ALAIR Catheter Model ATS 2-5

INDICATION FOR USE

The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long acting beta agonists.

BRONCHOSCOPE REQUIREMENTS

The Catheter is designed to be used with high-frequency compatible flexible bronchoscopes that have a minimum 2.0 mm working channel, and recommended 5.3 mm or less outer diameter.

MECHANISM OF ACTION

Airway smooth muscle (ASM) consists of muscle tissue within the airway walls in the lung. Contraction of the ASM is a main cause of airway constriction that leads to difficulty in breathing during asthma attacks. Severe asthma patients also experience an increase in ASM mass. This increase, together with inflammation of the airways, combines to thicken airway walls, which decreases the inside diameter of the airways when the ASM contracts. The resulting decrease in airway diameter causes increased resistance to airflow and further contributes to difficulty in breathing during asthma attacks.

The Alair™ System is used to deliver thermal energy to the airway wall, to heat the tissue in a controlled manner in order to reduce ASM mass. Bronchial thermoplasty is intended to reduce, debulk, or partially eliminate smooth muscle tissue. In preclinical studies (Danek et al. 2004¹, Brown et al. 2005²), the reduction of ASM has been shown to decrease the ability of the airways to constrict/contract, reduce resistance to airflow and responsiveness of the airway, and increase the resting diameter of the airway.

CONTRAINDICATIONS

Patients with the following conditions should not be treated:

- Presence of a pacemaker, internal defibrillator, or other implantable electronic devices,
- Known sensitivity to medications required to perform bronchoscopy, including lidocaine, atropine, and benzodiazepines,
- Patients previously treated with the Alair System should not be retreated in the same area(s). No clinical data are available studying the safety and/or effectiveness of repeat treatments.

Patients should not be treated while the following conditions are present:

- Active respiratory infection,
- Asthma exacerbation or changing dose of systemic corticosteroids for asthma (up or down) in the past 14 days,
- Known coagulopathy,
- As with other bronchoscopic procedures, patients should stop taking anticoagulants, antiplatelet agents, aspirin and NSAIDs before the procedure with physician guidance.

WARNINGS

Read these directions for use in conjunction with the Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 Operator's Manual before using the Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System. Failure to follow any instructions or failure to heed any warnings or precautions may result in harm or injury to patient.

- 1 Prior to performing the procedure, ensure appropriate training, equipment, medications and staff are in place to handle any potential bronchoscopic, respiratory or anesthesia related emergencies. The Alair System should only be used in a fully equipped bronchoscopy suite with access to full resuscitation equipment to handle hemoptysis, pneumothorax, and other respiratory complications including acute exacerbation of asthma and respiratory failure requiring intubation.
- 2 Do not deliver energy if the Catheter's electrode array is in contact with a metal object. This may result in harm or injury to the patient and/or operator.
- 3 Do not advance the Catheter within the bronchoscope if significant resistance is felt, as this may result in harm or injury to the patient and/or cause damage to the Catheter and/or bronchoscope.
- 4 Do not advance the Catheter into bronchi in which the Catheter cannot be seen under bronchoscopic vision. Advancing the Catheter beyond this region may cause patient harm or injury such as pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum.
- 5 Do not reposition the bronchoscope with the Catheter advanced beyond the distal end of the bronchoscope as this may result in patient harm or injury.

- 6 Use of the Alair Catheter with a non-Alair Controller may result in harm or injury to the patient and/or operator, or may result in product malfunction.
- 7 Do not treat the right middle lobe because of the potential susceptibility of the right middle lobe to transient obstruction as a result of inflammation or edema due to certain anatomical characteristics. The narrow diameter of the lobar bronchus and acute take-off angle may create poor conditions of drainage that may cause patient harm or injury such as atelectasis or difficulty in re-inflation (Right Middle Lobe Syndrome).
- 8 No modification of this equipment is allowed.

PRECAUTIONS

- 1 The Alair Catheter is provided sterile and is SINGLE USE ONLY. Do not use the Catheter if the package is opened, torn, or damaged. Use of a Catheter from damaged packaging may result in patient harm or injury. **Do not re-sterilize, reprocess or reuse the Catheter**, as this may result in patient harm or injury, transmittal of infectious disease or product malfunction.
- 2 Do not use the Catheter if it comes in contact with a surface that is not aseptic (e.g. floor). This may result in patient infection.
- 3 Do not use the Catheter if it is damaged or irregular. Use of a damaged or irregular Catheter may result in patient harm or injury.
- 4 Do not use the Catheter if the marker bands are not visible (See Operational Instructions, Figure 5).
- 5 Use care when handling the Catheter to avoid kinking the Catheter shaft.
- 6 Avoid deflecting the bronchoscope while the electrode array is within the bend of the bronchoscope's working channel as this may result in damage to the Catheter and failure of the Catheter to operate properly.
- 7 Before inserting or removing the Catheter from the bronchoscope, ensure the electrode array is relaxed. Do not use the Catheter if the electrode array does not expand or relax properly (See Operational Instructions, Figures 6 and 7).
- 8 Before delivering energy, make certain that all electrodes are in contact with the airway wall.
- 9 Caution should be taken in patients with the following conditions due to a potential increased risk of adverse events that may be associated with the procedure. Patients with these conditions were not studied in the pivotal trial and the safety of Alair treatment for such patients has not been determined:
 - Post-bronchodilator FEV₁ < 65% predicted.
 - Other respiratory diseases including emphysema, vocal cord dysfunction, mechanical upper airway obstruction, cystic fibrosis or uncontrolled obstructive sleep apnea.
 - Use of short-acting bronchodilator in excess of 12 puffs per day within 48 hours of bronchoscopy (excluding prophylactic use for exercise).
 - Use of oral corticosteroids in excess of 10 milligrams per day for asthma.
 - Increased risk for adverse events associated with bronchoscopy or anesthesia, such as pregnancy, insulin dependent diabetes, epilepsy or other significant co-morbidities, such as uncontrolled coronary artery disease, acute or chronic renal failure, and uncontrolled hypertension.

- Intubation for asthma, or ICU admission for asthma within the prior 24 months.
- Any of the following within the past 12 months:
 - i. 4 or more lower respiratory tract infections (LRTI)
 - ii. 3 or more hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms
 - iii. 4 or more OCS pulses for asthma exacerbation
- 10 The Alair™ System should only be used by clinicians who are experienced in bronchoscopy and have undergone adequate training with the device.
- 11 The Alair System should only be used in patients stable enough to undergo bronchoscopy in the judgment of their clinician.
- 12 Follow local governing ordinances and your institution's biohazard procedures regarding disposal of the Alair Catheter and patient return electrode.

CLINICAL STUDIES

Objectives

The pivotal study was a multi-center, randomized, double-blind, sham-controlled study to demonstrate the safety and effectiveness of the Alair System in a population of subjects with severe asthma.

Effectiveness Endpoints

The primary effectiveness endpoint was the difference between treatment (Alair) and control (Sham) groups in the change in the Asthma Quality of Life Questionnaire (AQLQ) score between baseline and the average of 6-, 9-, and 12-month follow-up visits (integrated AQLQ score). Other endpoints included: rates of severe asthma exacerbations, proportions of patients with severe asthma exacerbations, and days lost from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. In addition, several safety endpoints were considered for effectiveness; these endpoints included rates of asthma (multiple symptoms)* adverse events, Unscheduled Physician Office visits for respiratory symptoms, Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms, and Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms.

* "Asthma (multiple symptoms)" is defined as occurrence or worsening of shortness of breath, wheeze, cough, productive cough, or some combination of these.

Methods

This was a multicenter, randomized (2 Alair, 1 Sham), double-blind, sham-controlled clinical trial comparing the effects of treatment with the Alair System to a Sham treatment in subjects that were optimized to conventional therapy of inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) and long-acting β_2 -agonists (LABA). All subjects included in the Study were taking ICS ($> 1000 \mu\text{g}$ beclomethasone or equivalent per day) and LABA ($\geq 100 \mu\text{g}$ salmeterol or equivalent per day), and were still symptomatic. Subjects in the Alair and Sham groups were administered the Alair treatment and Sham bronchoscopies, respectively, by an unblinded bronchoscopy team in 3 separate bronchoscopy sessions. Each bronchoscopy session was separated by at least 3 weeks. All bronchoscopy sessions were administered under local anesthesia with sedation. Subjects had follow-up visits with blinded asthma assessment teams at 6-weeks, 12-weeks, 6-months, 9-months, and 12-months after the final bronchoscopy session. All subjects were prescribed to take 50 mg of oral prednisone or prednisolone (or equivalent) each day for 5 days covering the 3 days before the bronchoscopy session, the day of the bronchoscopy session, and the day after the bronchoscopy session (prophylactic indication).

Statistical Plan

Primary and secondary endpoints, as well as adverse events were analyzed using Bayesian statistics. The Posterior Probability of Superiority was calculated for the primary and secondary endpoints, as well as safety outcomes.

Patient Population

Enrollment was limited to patients with severe persistent asthma who were still symptomatic despite being managed on conventional therapy of high dose ICS and LABA. Subjects may have been taking up to 10 milligrams of oral corticosteroids per day. Study subjects were required to meet the following patient selection criteria:

Key Entry Criteria

Inclusion

1. Adult; age 18-65 years.
2. Asthma requiring regular maintenance medication that includes inhaled corticosteroids (greater than $1000 \mu\text{g}$ beclomethasone per day or equivalent) and long-acting β_2 -agonists (at least $100 \mu\text{g}$ salmeterol per day or equivalent), with or without other asthma medications. Oral corticosteroids at a dosage of up to, but not greater than 10 mg per day, or 20 mg every other day are acceptable.
3. Asthma Quality of Life Questionnaire Score during the Baseline Phase of 6.25 or less.
4. Pre-bronchodilator forced expiratory volume in one second $\geq 60\%$ predicted (after patients stabilized on inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting β_2 -agonists during the Baseline Phase).
5. Non-smoker x 1 year or greater (if former smoker, less than 10 pack years total smoking history).

Exclusion

1. Post-bronchodilator $\text{FEV}_1 < 65\%$ predicted.
2. Three or more hospitalizations for exacerbations of asthma in the previous year; OR a history of life-threatening asthma, defined by past intubations for asthma, or intensive care unit admission for asthma within the prior 24 months.
3. History of recurrent lower respiratory tract infection requiring antibiotics (more than 3 in the past 12-Months).
4. History of recurrent oral steroid use for asthma (4 or more pulses of oral steroids in the past 12-Months).

Demographics

A total of 297 subjects between the ages of 18 and 65 were enrolled and randomized (2 Alair: 1 Sham) in this study. One hundred and ninety (190) subjects received the Alair treatment and 98 subjects received the Sham control treatment (Intent-to-Treat population). The Sham procedure was identical to the Alair procedure except that no energy was delivered through the Catheter.

There were no statistical differences in demographic measures between the Alair and Sham groups. Subject demographics are described in Table 1.

	Alair (n=190)	Sham (n=98)
Age (years) (Mean ± SD)	41 ± 12	41 ± 12
Gender		
Male	81 (43%)	38 (39%)
Female	109 (57%)	60 (61%)
Race/Ethnicity		
Caucasian	151 (80%)	72 (74%)
African American / Black	19 (10%)	15 (15%)
Hispanic	6 (3%)	4 (4%)
Asian	4 (2%)	1 (1%)
Other	10 (5%)	6 (6%)
Height (cm) (Mean ± SD)	167 ± 9	167 ± 10
Weight (kg) (Mean ± SD)	82 ± 18	82 ± 20

Table 1: Subject Demographics (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Effectiveness Results

Effectiveness analyses were performed for both the Intent-to-Treat (ITT) population and Per-Protocol (PP) population. The ITT population consisted of all randomized subjects who have been administered at least one bronchoscopy. The PP population excluded all subjects in the ITT population who met any of the following criteria:

- Have taken any interfering concomitant medications.
- Have undergone other interfering treatments.
- Did not attend one of the 6-, 9-, 12-month visits, with the exception of a discontinuation from the Study due to an adverse event related to Study treatment.
- Had missed one or more bronchoscopy procedures.

Effectiveness Endpoints

Although the clinical study was powered only for the primary effectiveness endpoint (see below), several effectiveness endpoints and safety endpoints that could also be considered effectiveness endpoints demonstrated clinically meaningful differences in favor of the Alair group compared to the Sham group. The effectiveness endpoints were rates of severe asthma exacerbations, proportions of patients with severe asthma exacerbations, and days lost from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. The safety endpoints considered for effectiveness were rates of asthma, emergency room visits for respiratory symptoms, and hospitalization rates for respiratory symptoms.

Steroid Exacerbations* (Severe Exacerbations Requiring Systemic Corticosteroids) (ITT Population)

During the Post-Treatment Phase, the severe exacerbation rate for the Steroid Exacerbations was 0.48 exacerbations/subject/year in the Alair group and 0.70 exacerbations/subject/year in the Sham group [95% CI (Sham - Alair): -0.031, 0.520]. During the Post-Treatment Phase, the proportion of subjects experiencing Steroid Exacerbations was 26% in the Alair group and 40% in the Sham group [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 2.1%, 25.1%].

Steroid Exacerbation rates (annualized rate) and proportion of patients experiencing Severe Exacerbations for the Post-Treatment Phase are presented graphically in Figure 2.

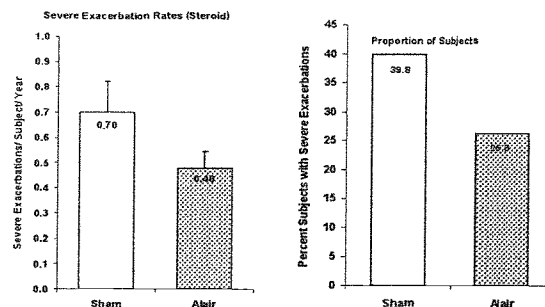


Figure 2: Severe Exacerbations during the Post-Treatment Phase

*Steroid Exacerbations = Exacerbations treated with oral or intravenous corticosteroids, OR a doubling of the baseline inhaled corticosteroid dose for at least 3 days, OR any temporary increase in the dosage of oral corticosteroids for a subject taking maintenance oral corticosteroids at Study entry.

Annualized rates of exacerbations per subject are extrapolated from the 46 week Post-Treatment Phase from 6 weeks after the last bronchoscopy procedure to the 12 month follow-up visit.

Days Lost from Work, School, or Other Daily Activities due to Asthma Symptoms (ITT Population)

During the Post-Treatment Phase, subjects in the Alair group lost an average of 1.3 days/year/subject from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms, compared to the Sham group that lost 3.9 days/year/subject (annualized rates per subject are extrapolated from the 46 week Post-Treatment Phase from 6 weeks after the last bronchoscopy procedure to the 12 month follow-up visit) [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 0.425, 6.397].

Safety Endpoints that Demonstrated Effectiveness

Measures such as Emergency Room visits and Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms are generally considered to be important measures of safety, especially if an intervention results in an increase in the rate of one or more of these events. However, these measures can also be considered important measures of effectiveness if an intervention results in a measurable decrease in the rate of one or more of these events. During longer-term follow-up (> 6 weeks after the last Alair™ treatment), there was a reduction in asthma (multiple symptoms) adverse events [95% CI (Sham - Alair): -0.01, 0.001], Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 0.11, 0.83], and Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms (event rate per group) [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 0.025, 0.172], presented graphically in Figure 3.

There was a reduction in the proportion of subjects having asthma (multiple symptoms) adverse events [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 4.0%, 27.3%], and in the proportion of subjects having Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms in the Alair group (3.7% in the Alair group compared to 15.3% in the Sham group) [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 4.6%, 19.7%].

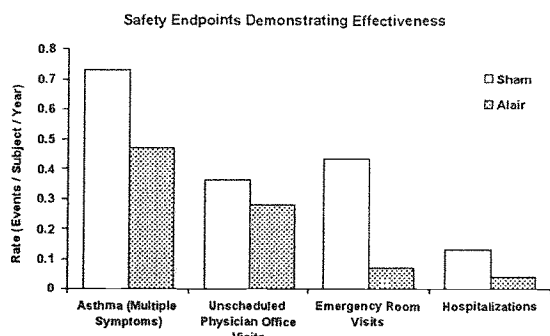


Figure 3: Safety Endpoints demonstrating Effectiveness (ITT Population)

Primary Effectiveness Endpoint – Integrated AQLQ Score

The difference between the Alair and Sham groups in the average change in AQLQ score from Baseline at the 6-, 9-, and 12-month follow-up visits was 0.210 [95% CI (Alair - Sham): -0.025, 0.445]. The pre-specified Posterior Probability of Superiority for the difference between the groups was 96.4%. For the ITT population, the difference between the groups had a Posterior Probability of Superiority of 96.0%, and for the PP population, the difference between the groups had a Posterior Probability of Superiority of 97.9%, demonstrating an improvement in the Asthma Quality of Life in the Alair group compared to Sham. The results for the change from Baseline of the Integrated AQLQ score for the Intent-to-Treat and Per Protocol populations are summarized in Table 2.

Population	Difference Between Groups in Integrated AQLQ Score (Posterior Mean, 95% CI)	Posterior Probability of Superiority (%)
ITT (Intent-to-Treat) (Alair N=190, Sham N=98)	0.210 (-0.025, 0.445)	96.0
PP (Per Protocol) (Alair N=173, Sham N=95)	0.244 (0.009, 0.478)	97.9

Table 2: Primary Effectiveness Endpoint: Integrated AQLQ Score

ADVERSE EVENTS IN PIVOTAL STUDY

Patient Population

The Alair™ System was evaluated in a randomized, double-blind, sham-controlled, multi-center clinical study – the Asthma Intervention Research 2 (AIR2) Trial. A total of 297 subjects with severe persistent asthma who were still symptomatic despite being managed on conventional therapy of high dose ICS and LABA were randomized – 196 subjects in the Alair group and 101 subjects in the Sham group. (See the Clinical Data section for key entry criteria.) The Sham procedure was identical to the Alair procedure except that no energy was delivered to the Catheter in the sham procedure.

Safety analyses were performed for the Intent-to-Treat (ITT) population (288 subjects) that consisted of all randomized subjects who have been administered at least one bronchoscopy.

Observed Adverse Events

The safety of the Alair System was assessed by comparing adverse event profiles of the Alair and Sham group subjects. Adverse event profiles are compared for the Treatment Phase (day of first bronchoscopy procedure to 6 weeks after the last bronchoscopy procedure) and Post-Treatment Phase (6 weeks after the last bronchoscopy to the 12 month follow-up visit).

Adverse events (whether considered procedure-related or not procedure related by the investigator) occurring with $\geq 3\%$ incidence in the Alair group are presented for 288 patients in Table 3.

Adverse Event	Treatment*		Post-Treatment**	
	Alair (N=190) %	Sham (N=98) %	Alair (N=187) %	Sham (N=98) %
Average duration of period (days)	84		322	
Ear, Nose, and Throat				
Upper respiratory tract infection	20	11	30	26
Nasopharyngitis	5	7	11	5
Throat irritation	5	12	1	3
Viral upper respiratory tract infection	4	2	6	7
Sinusitis	3	5	6	7
Acute Sinusitis	3	2	4	8
Pharyngolaryngeal pain	3	5	1	2
Allergic rhinitis	2	3	4	4
Rhinitis	2	0	4	6
Lower Respiratory				
Asthma (Multiple Symptoms)	52	39	27	43
Wheezing	15	6	4	3
Chest pain	14	13	3	1
Cough	12	14	3	5
Dyspnea	11	6	2	1
Chest discomfort	9	10	2	1
Lower respiratory tract infection	8	2	3	6
Productive cough	7	9	3	4
Atelectasis	5	0	0	0
Bronchitis	4	2	7	5
Hemoptysis	3	0	0	0
Neurology				
Headaches	14	9	5	3
Anxiety	4	0	1	2
Gastrointestinal				
Dyspepsia	4	2	2	4
Nausea	3	4	1	1

Adverse Event	Treatment*		Post-Treatment**	
	Alair (N=190) %	Sham (N=98) %	Alair (N=187) %	Sham (N=98) %
Non-site specific				
Influenza	4	2	4	12
Pyrexia (fever)	4	2	0	1
Other				
Back pain	5	6	3	5
Hypertension	3	2	3	3
Urinary tract infection	1	1	3	1

Table 3: Adverse Events with $\geq 3\%$ Incidence (% of subjects) in the Alair Group

* Treatment phase represents adverse events reported between the first bronchoscopy and 6-weeks post last bronchoscopy.

** Post-Treatment phase represents adverse events reported between 6-weeks post last bronchoscopy and the 12 month visit.

Respiratory adverse events occurring in either the Treatment Phase or in the first year Post-Treatment at a rate of $< 3\%$ and $\geq 1\%$ (whether considered procedure-related or not procedure-related by the investigator) in the Alair group included abnormal breath sounds, acute bronchitis, bronchial obstruction, bronchospasm, discolored sputum (blood-tinged sputum), epistaxis, hypoxia, increased upper airway secretion, nasal congestion, operative hemorrhage, pneumonia, pulmonary congestion, rhinorrhea, viral lower respiratory tract infection, and viral pharyngitis.

Non-respiratory adverse events occurring in either the Treatment Phase or in the first year Post-Treatment at a rate of $< 3\%$ and $\geq 1\%$ (whether considered procedure-related or not procedure-related by the investigator) in the Alair group included abdominal pain, acne, allergic dermatitis, arthralgia, back injury, candidiasis, conjunctivitis, cystitis, depression, diarrhea, dizziness, fatigue, food poisoning, gastritis, gastroenteritis, gastroesophageal reflux disease, gastrointestinal infection, heart palpitations, herpes simplex, hiccups, hyperglycemia, hypersensitivity, hypotension, injury, insomnia, intervertebral disc protrusion, joint sprain, ligament rupture, migraine, muscle strain, musculoskeletal pain, nephrolithiasis, oral candidiasis, pain in extremity, peripheral edema, procedural pain, rash, skin laceration, tendonitis, tonsillitis, tooth abscess, tooth extraction, tooth infection, toothache, tremor, viral tonsillitis, and vomiting.

There may be other risks associated with the procedure and attendant anesthesia and medications. Please consult the manufacturers' directions for use for the equipment and medications used in association with the bronchial thermoplasty procedure for relevant indications, warnings, precautions, and adverse events.

During the Treatment Phase in the AIR2 Trial, there was a transient increase in respiratory adverse events, including asthma (multiple symptoms), upper respiratory tract infection, atelectasis, lower respiratory tract infection, wheezing, hemoptysis, and anxiety in the Alair group compared to the Sham group. There was a lower incidence of throat irritation in the Alair group compared to the Sham group. There were 7 instances of hemoptysis defined as > 5.0 mL (1.3% of bronchoscopies) of which 2 occurred on the day of the procedure, 2 occurred within 3 days, 2 occurred at 2 weeks, and one occurred on Day 31 after the procedure. The greatest amount

of hemoptysis observed was a cumulative total of 150 mL that occurred over 5 days and was treated with bronchial artery embolization.

During the Treatment Phase (~12 weeks period), the rate of Unscheduled Physician Office visits (events / subject / 12 weeks) in the Alair group was 0.230 compared to 0.133 in the Sham group. The rate of Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms (events / subject / 12 weeks) was 0.086 in the Alair group compared to 0.028 in the Sham group. The rate of Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms (events / subject / 12 weeks) was 0.062 in the Alair group compared to 0.075 in the Sham group.

During the Post-Treatment Phase in the AIR2 Trial, there was a lower incidence of respiratory symptoms in the Alair group compared to the Sham group, including a 36% reduction in asthma (multiple symptoms) events and proportion of subjects with asthma (multiple symptoms) events. There was also a lower incidence of influenza, and a greater incidence of nasopharyngitis, in the Alair group compared to the Sham group.

High Resolution Computed Tomography (HRCT) Results

In the 150 subjects (100 Alair group and 50 Sham group) assigned to HRCT scan examinations, at 1-year, there were no difference in signs of gas trapping or consolidation and there was no evidence of bronchiectasis. A difference was seen in bronchial wall thickening without gas trapping which occurred only in the Sham subjects (4%).

Summary of Clinical Findings

Results from the clinical study which evaluated the effectiveness and safety of the Alair™ System in subjects with severe asthma demonstrated that Alair treatment resulted in clinically significant reductions in severe exacerbations that required systemic steroids, the percent of subjects experiencing the severe exacerbations, the number of Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms, the percent of subjects experiencing Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms, Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms, and days lost from school/work/other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. Although bronchial thermoplasty was associated with an increased rate of respiratory adverse events during the Treatment Phase (primarily related to asthma), in the Post-Treatment Phase, a smaller proportion of patients treated with bronchial thermoplasty experienced respiratory adverse events, including asthma (multiple symptoms).

HOW SUPPLIED

The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System Catheter Model ATS-2-5 is supplied sterile and is for SINGLE USE ONLY. Do not re-sterilize, reprocess or reuse the Catheter, as this may result in patient harm or injury, transmittal of infectious disease, or product malfunction. Store in a cool, dry, dark place. Do not use if package is opened or damaged. Do not use if labeling is incomplete or illegible. Rotate inventory so that product is used prior to the expiration date on package label.

OPERATIONAL INSTRUCTIONS

Alair Catheter Inspection and Preparation

1. The Alair System should only be used by a physician trained in bronchoscopy. These instructions do not explain bronchoscopic procedures.
2. Please read the Operator's Manual for the Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 before beginning the procedure.
3. Visually inspect the package for damage before removing the Catheter from the package. Do not use the Catheter if the package is damaged or has been previously opened or torn.

4. Aseptically remove the Catheter from the package tray and inspect for any damage. The Catheter is packaged with the electrode array retracted within the protective, removable orange-colored Catheter tip sheath. Before use, remove the protective orange sheath. Inspect the Catheter for any damage such as broken or crushed areas of the Catheter, sharp or protruding edges at the distal tip, or any excessive bends or kinks in the Catheter shaft. Do not use the Catheter if any damage or irregularity is found. See Figure 4.

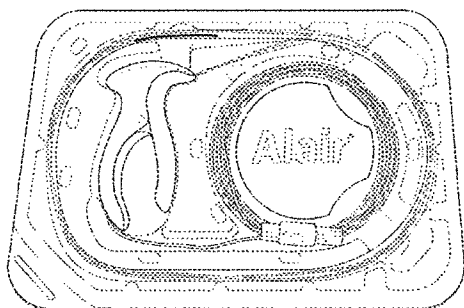


Figure 4. Alair™ Catheter in Tray

5. The distal portion of the Catheter shaft has marker bands that are spaced 5 mm apart to aid in the positioning of the Catheter electrode array. Do not use the Catheter if the marker bands are not visible. See Figure 5.

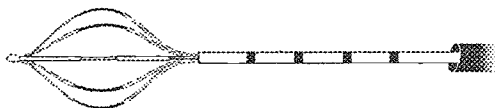


Figure 5. Alair Catheter with its four Marker Bands, spaced 5 mm apart

6. Hold the Catheter handle in the palm of your hand, with the thumb and forefinger just below the Alair logo. Then, squeeze the forward handle back towards the back handle, ensuring that the electrode array expands properly. Verify that the electrode array opens fully and evenly. See Figure 6.

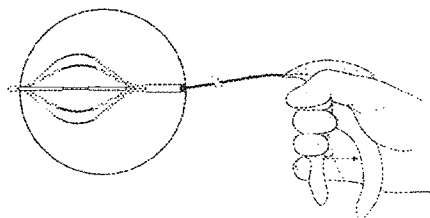


Figure 6: Alair Catheter Electrode Array Expanded

7. Relax the electrode array by releasing the front handle. See Figure 7. Do not use the Catheter if the electrode array does not expand or relax properly.

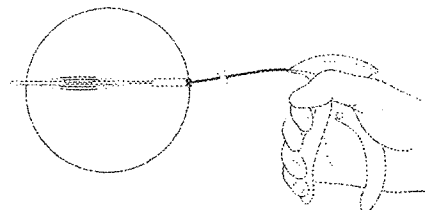


Figure 7: Alair Catheter Electrode Array Relaxed

Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System Set-up and Operation

The Alair Catheter is intended to be used in conjunction with the Alair Controller. Please read the Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 Operator's Manual before using the Alair System.

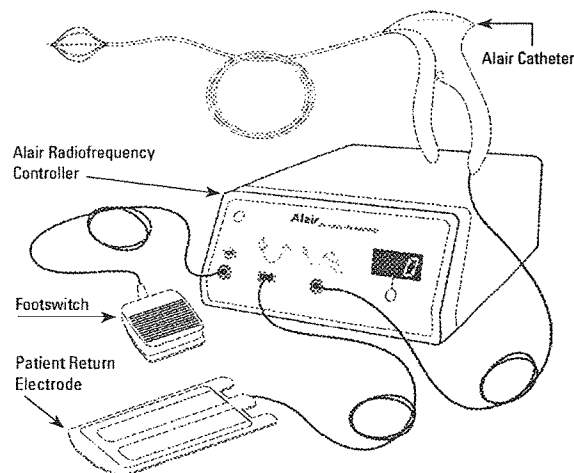


Figure 8: Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 set up

Consult the Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 Operator's Manual for specific instructions on:

- Controller Installation;
- Controller Power-Up;
- Connection of Components and Accessories;
- Controller Modes;
- Periodic Maintenance and Repair;
- Troubleshooting; and
- Technical Specifications.

Patient Preparation

1. Administer prophylactic prednisone or equivalent at a dosage of 50 mg/day for the 3 days before the procedure, the day of the procedure and the day after the procedure to minimize post procedure inflammation.

2. Pre-procedure spirometry: On the day of procedure, perform a post-bronchodilator (BD) FEV₁ to assess patient stability pre and post procedure. Pre-procedure FEV₁ value should be greater than or equal to 85% of normal value.
3. Verify the patient remains a good candidate for bronchoscopy under moderate sedation prior to initiation of the procedure (Mayse et al 2007)⁹. Postpone the procedure if any of the following conditions apply:
 - Prescribed prednisone was not taken on the 3 days before bronchoscopy.
 - SpO₂ is less than 90% on room air.
 - Increase in asthma symptoms in last 48 hours requiring more than 4 puffs/day on average of rescue bronchodilator over pretreatment usage.
 - Asthma exacerbation or changing dose of systemic corticosteroids for asthma (up or down) in the past 14 days.
 - Active respiratory infection, active allergic sinusitis, or other clinical instability.
 - Physician feels for any reason the procedure should be postponed.
4. Prepare the patient for bronchoscopy. Administration of an antisialagogue (glycopyrrolate or atropine) is recommended to reduce airway secretions during procedure to improve visibility. Follow patient management protocols according to staffing, training, and individual institution-specific policies and guidelines for bronchoscopy.
5. Place the patient return electrode securely on the patient in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
6. Introduce the flexible bronchoscope through the nose or mouth as appropriate. See Figure 9 below.

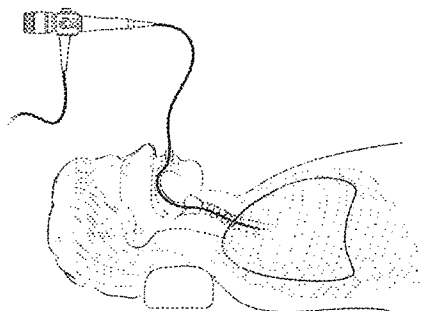


Figure 9: Bronchoscope navigation into patient's airways

7. Navigate the bronchoscope to the targeted site and position the bronchoscope so that the targeted site is in bronchoscopic view.

Alair™ Catheter Use

1. Before inserting the Catheter into the bronchoscope, ensure the Catheter is connected, the Controller is set up properly, and the electrode array is relaxed.
2. Advance the Catheter into the bronchoscope working channel being careful not to kink the Catheter shaft. Kinking of the Catheter shaft could result in failure of the Catheter electrode array to open fully in tortuous anatomy. See PRECAUTIONS.

3. Avoid deflecting the bronchoscope while the electrode array is within the bend of the bronchoscope's working channel as this could result in damage to the Catheter and failure of the Catheter to operate properly. See PRECAUTIONS.
4. Advance the Catheter through the bronchoscope until the distal tip of the Catheter shaft is in bronchoscopic view. If the device encounters significant resistance during insertion, do not force it. In especially tortuous anatomy it may be necessary to relax the bronchoscope's deflection mechanism until the device passes smoothly. See Figure 10 below.

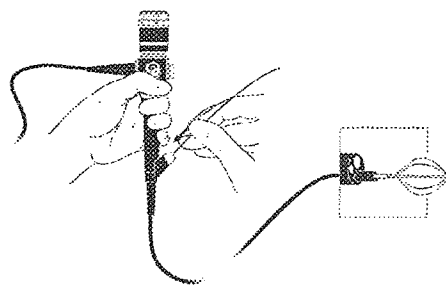


Figure 10: Alair Catheter introduced through working channel of bronchoscope

5. Advance the Catheter to the targeted site under bronchoscopic vision. Do not advance the Catheter into bronchi in which the Catheter cannot be seen under bronchoscopic vision. Advancing the Catheter under such conditions may result in pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum or other harm or injury to the patient. See WARNINGS.
6. Do not treat the right middle lobe because of the potential susceptibility of the right middle lobe to transient obstruction as a result of inflammation or edema due to certain anatomical characteristics. The narrow diameter of the lobar bronchus and acute take-off angle may create poor conditions of drainage that may cause patient harm or injury such as atelectasis or difficulty in re-inflation (Right Middle Lobe Syndrome). See WARNINGS.
7. Do not reposition the bronchoscope with the Catheter advanced beyond the distal end of the bronchoscope as this may result in harm or injury to the patient. See WARNINGS.
8. Once at the targeted site, squeeze the handle together to expand the electrode array partially so that the electrodes are close to or just touching the targeted site. With the electrode array partially expanded, adjust the axial position of the electrodes in the airway to position the active electrodes (exposed 5 mm center region of the array electrodes) as desired. Expand the array until all four electrodes firmly contact the airway wall. *Do not over-expand the electrode array* as this may cause one or more of electrodes to deploy inward or 'invert'. In most cases, contact with the airway wall will NOT require the Catheter handle to be squeezed completely. If an electrode inverts, relax the electrode array and then re-expand the array in a large, straight airway, confirming proper deployment before returning to the area being treated.
9. Proper contact of the electrodes with the airway wall should be confirmed visually. See Figure 11.

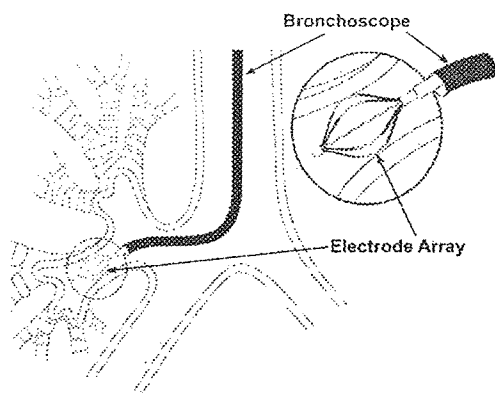


Figure 11: Alair™ Catheter in the Airway

10. Before delivering RF energy, make certain that all electrodes are in contact with the airway wall. See PRECAUTIONS.
11. Deliver RF energy to the targeted region by pressing and releasing the footswitch once. The Controller will deliver energy automatically according to preset parameters for time, energy, power, and temperature.
12. To manually terminate RF energy delivery, if necessary, press and release the footswitch again.

Note: The Controller will automatically shut off the RF energy if it detects atypical energy delivery or temperature response.

13. The Controller is programmed to alert the user with both audible and visual cues if re-deployment of the electrode array or replacement of the Catheter is required. Please refer to the Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 Operator's Manual for more detailed instructions on these audible sounds and light displays.

Note: If RF energy delivery ends prematurely, it may be necessary to re-deploy the electrode array and begin RF energy delivery again. If the problem persists, replace the Catheter.

14. Reposition the Catheter and repeat the steps above making 5 mm proximally placed contiguous treatments. The Catheter's marker bands are spaced 5 mm apart to assist with contiguous placement. See Figure 12.

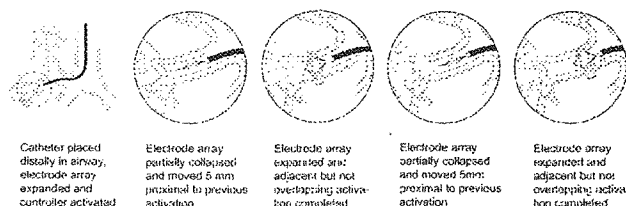


Figure 12: Contiguous Placement and Activation

15. It may be necessary to clean the electrode array if accumulated material on the array impairs visibility. To clean the electrode array follow these steps:
 - Remove the Catheter from the bronchoscope.
 - Expand the electrode array and vigorously swish the electrode array in a sterile container filled with ROOM TEMPERATURE saline.
 - DO NOT CLEAN THE ARRAY WITH COLD SALINE as this may trigger the Catheter failure alarm.
 - If further cleaning is necessary, wipe the array gently using a cotton swab or gauze.
16. Once the procedure is complete, relax the Catheter handle to relax the electrode array before removing the Catheter from the bronchoscope or before withdrawing the Catheter into the bronchoscope for airway navigation. To manipulate the bronchoscope with the Catheter in the working channel, withdraw the Catheter approximately 10 cm into the bronchoscope so the electrode array is proximal to the bend in the distal tip of the bronchoscope.
17. Once the treatment is complete, remove the Catheter from the bronchoscope. Disconnect the Catheter from the Controller, and dispose of the used Catheter per your institution's biohazard procedures. Remove the return electrode from the patient. Disconnect the patient return electrode from the Controller, and dispose of the patient return electrode per your institution's biohazard procedures.

Post Procedure Care

1. Follow appropriate institutional guidelines for post procedure care. It is recommended that patients should be carefully monitored and discharged only after they are deemed to be stable and have adequate (comparable to pre-procedure) lung function, mental status, and are able to adequately take liquids.
2. Recommended post procedure assessments are based on the criteria that were used in clinical trials of bronchial thermoplasty (Mayse et al 2007) and include:
 - 2 to 4 hour recovery/monitoring period following each procedure
 - Spirometry, breath sounds, and vital signs (heart rate, blood pressure, temperature, respiratory rate, pulse oximetry) before discharge
 - Discharge if post bronchodilator FEV₁ is within 80% of the pre procedure value and patient is feeling well
 - Verify patient has gag reflex and is able to take liquids
 - Remind patient to take prophylactic prednisone or equivalent the day following bronchoscopy
 - Caution patient about the potential adverse events that they might experience including hemoptysis, fever, cough, and worsening of asthma symptoms. Patients should be advised to consult their physician if they experience any of these adverse events, or asthma symptoms that are not controlled by their reliever medications.
 - Contact patient via phone calls at 1, 2 and 7 days to assess post procedure status
 - Office visit at 2 to 3 weeks to assess clinical stability and schedule subsequent bronchial thermoplasty procedures as appropriate

MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING

- If mucus builds up in the airways and obscures visualization, remove the Catheter from the bronchoscope, provide irrigation with sterile saline, and suction the resulting fluid from the airways.
- If the Catheter handle alarm (red light) appears on the Controller front panel the Catheter should be replaced. The only exception to this instruction occurs if the Catheter electrode array has been exposed to a low (<16 °C) temperature. In these limited cases (e.g., cleaning the array in iced saline or exposing a wet array to cold air resulting in evaporative cooling) the electrode array should be returned to room temperature and the Catheter connector should be unplugged and re-connected to the Controller. If the Catheter handle alarm persists, replace the Catheter and continue with the bronchial thermoplasty procedure.
- If the electrode array does not expand or relax properly, remove the Catheter from the bronchoscope and squeeze and relax the Catheter handle to visually confirm that the electrode array is functioning properly. If it is not functioning properly, replace the Catheter and continue with the bronchial thermoplasty procedure.
- If you are alerted to auditory or visual cues from the Controller, consult the Alair™ Bronchial Thermoplasty RF Controller Model ATS 200 Operator's Manual for operating and troubleshooting guidelines for the Controller.
- If an electrode inverts, relax the electrode array and then re-expand the array in a large, straight airway, confirming proper deployment before returning to the area being treated. In most cases, contact with the airway wall will NOT require the Catheter handle to be squeezed completely.

REFERENCES

- 1 Danek CJ, Lombard CM, Dungworth DL, Cox PG, Miller JD, Biggs MJ, Keast TM, Loomas BE, Wizeman WJ, Hogg JC, Leff AR. Reduction in airway hyperresponsiveness to methacholine by the application of RF energy in dogs. *J Appl Physiol*. 2004; 97(5):1946-53.
- 2 Brown RH, Wizeman W, Danek C, Mitzner W. Effect of bronchial thermoplasty on airway distensibility. *Eur Respir J*. 2005 Aug;26(2):277-82.
- 3 Mayse ML, Laviolette M, Rubin AS, Lampron N, Simoff M, Duhamel D, Musani, AI, Yung RC, Mehta AC. Clinical Pearls for Bronchial Thermoplasty. *J Bronchol*. 2007, 14:115-123.

NO IMPLIED LICENSE

The purchase of the Alair Catheter does not grant a license, either expressly, by implication, estoppel or otherwise under any Boston Scientific patent right or patent covering or relating to any method or process in which the Alair Catheter might be used. An implied license only exists for the Alair Catheter used in conjunction with the Alair ATS 200 Controller. Nothing herein shall be construed as right or license to (a) make, use, sell, offer to sell, import, lease or distribute the Alair Catheter with a non-Alair controller or (b) sell or offer to sell the Alair Catheter to customers that plan to make, have made, use, sell, offer to sell, import, lease or distribute the Alair Catheter with a non-Alair controller.

WARRANTY

Catheter - Warranty

Boston Scientific Corporation (BSC) warrants until the expiration marked on each instrument that reasonable care has been used in the design and manufacture of this instrument. **This warranty is in lieu of and excludes all other warranties not expressly set forth herein, whether express or implied by operation of law or otherwise, including, but not limited to, any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.** Handling, storage, cleaning and sterilization of this instrument as well as other factors relating to the patient, diagnosis, treatment, surgical procedures and other matters beyond BSC's control may directly affect the instrument and the results obtained from its use. BSC shall replace any instrument that BSC determines was defective at the time of shipment if notice thereof is received before the expiration marked on the instrument. BSC shall not be liable for any incidental or consequential loss, damage or expense directly or indirectly arising from the use of this instrument. BSC neither assumes, nor authorizes any other person to assume for it, any other or additional liability or responsibility in connection with this instrument. **BSC assumes no liability with respect to instruments reused, reprocessed or resterilized; use by a non-qualified physician; use contrary to documentation; use with a non-Alair controller.**

Valleylab is a trademark of Covidien AG.

ConMed is a trademark of ConMed Corporation.



Catalog Number



Consult instructions for use



Contents



Legal Manufacturer



Lot



Product Number



Recyclable Package



Use By



For single use only. Do not reuse.



Do Not Restenize



Do not use if package is damaged.



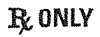
Separate Collection



Sterilized using irradiation.



Minimum Required Working Channel



For prescription use only



Caution



**Legal
Manufacturer**

Boston Scientific Corporation
One Boston Scientific Place
Natick, MA 01760-1537
USA
USA Customer Service 888-272-1001



**Do not use if package
is damaged.**



**Recyclable
Package**

© 2012 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2012-11



90723943-01

Black (K) ΔE ≤5.0

Boston
Scientific

ALAIR™

Bronchial Thermoplasty
Radiofrequency Controller

Model ATS 200

Operator's Manual

3






Black (K) ΔE ≤ 5.0

BSC000677

Boston Scientific (Master Brand DFU Template 8in x 8in Global, 90109041/AL), User Manual, MB, Alair Radiofrequency Controller, Canada/Mexico, 90795407-01B, pretrans

TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOR PROFESSIONAL USE ONLY	3
ALAIR™ BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY SYSTEM DESCRIPTION	3
INDICATION FOR USE	3
MECHANISM OF ACTION	3
CONTRAINDICATIONS 	3
WARNINGS 	4
PRECAUTIONS 	4
CLINICAL STUDIES	5
ADVERSE EVENTS IN PIVOTAL STUDY	7
INSTALLATION	9
Preparing the Alair Controller for Use	9
Power Cord	9
Proper Grounding	9
Routine Inspections and Maintenance	9
Cleaning and Disinfecting Instructions	9
Front Panel Indicators, Display, and Receptacles	9
INDICATORS	9
DISPLAY	10
RECEPTACLES	10
Rear Panel Indicators and Functions	10
OPERATIONAL INSTRUCTIONS	10
Alair Controller Power-Up	10
Connection of Alair System Components and Accessories	11
Alair Controller Modes	11
MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING	11
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	12
RF OUTPUT (not user adjustable)	12
Shutdown Limits	12
Mechanical Specifications	12
Environmental Storage and Transport Conditions	12
Operational Conditions	12
AC Input Specifications	12
EMC TEST LEVELS, COMPLIANCE LEVELS, AND ENVIRONMENTAL GUIDANCE	12
Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration: Electromagnetic Immunity	12
Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration: Electromagnetic Emissions	14
IEC Recommended Separation of RF Communication Equipment	14
REFERENCES	14
NO IMPLIED LICENSE	14
WARRANTY	14
SYMBOL LEGEND	15

ALAIR™

Bronchial Thermoplasty Radiofrequency Controller

Rx ONLY

Caution: Federal Law (USA) restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician.



FOR PROFESSIONAL USE ONLY

The Alair Radiofrequency Controller must be used by a physician who has training and experience in performing bronchoscopic procedures.

ALAIR BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

This Operator's Manual provides instructions for using the Alair Radiofrequency (RF) Controller Model ATS 200. The Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 is intended to be used with the Alair Catheter. The Alair RF Controller is designed to provide controlled delivery of radiofrequency energy to the Alair Catheter.

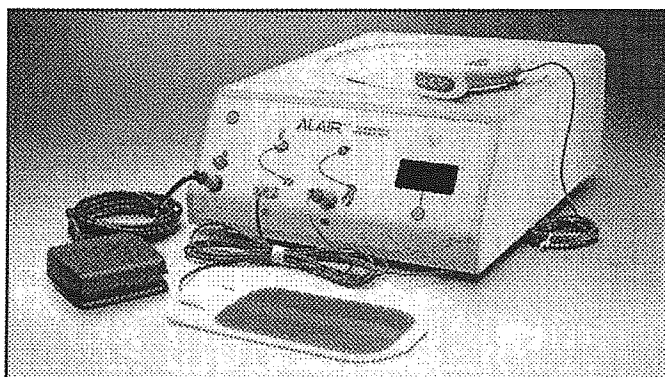


Figure 1. The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System

The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System ("Alair System"), manufactured by Boston Scientific Corporation (BSC), consists of the Alair Controller System and the Alair Catheter, as described below:

Alair Controller System

Alair Radiofrequency (RF) Controller: The Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 ("Controller") is designed to provide controlled delivery of RF energy to the Alair Catheter. Energy from the Controller is delivered to the Catheter through the electrical cable attached to the proximal end of the Catheter handle. Actual power delivered is automatically modulated by the Controller based on temperature control algorithms. The Controller delivers low-power, temperature-controlled RF energy to the airway at a predetermined temperature setting for a predetermined time period. The Controller incorporates hardware and software features that limit current, voltage, power, energy, time and temperature during each application of

RF energy. The Controller is not intended to come in contact with the patient and therefore is not provided as a sterile device.

Footswitch: The Controller is used with a footswitch that allows the operator to start and stop the delivery of RF energy. The Controller is designed to be used with the compatible footswitch provided by BSC. The footswitch is not intended to come into contact with the patient and therefore is not provided as a sterile device.

Patient Return Electrode: The Controller is designed to be used with a gel-type patient return electrode that is compliant with the applicable portions of IEC 60601-2-2 and/or CE marked. The patient return electrode is used to complete the return path for the electrical current. Use only patient return electrodes indicated for use with adults or patients weighing more than 15 kg (33 lbs). Examples of acceptable patient return electrodes include Valleylab™ E7506 and ConMed™ 51-7310. Follow the directions for use (DFU) packaged with the patient return electrode.

Alair Catheter

The Alair Catheter Model ATS 2-5 ("Catheter") is provided sterile and is a SINGLE-USE ONLY, disposable device. The Catheter delivers energy from the Controller to the desired site in the airway and relays temperature feedback to the Controller. The Alair Catheter Model ATS 2-5 is designed to be used with the Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200. For information on the preparation, use and other technical specifications, please refer to the Alair Catheter directions for use (DFU) that is supplied with Model ATS 2-5.

Contents

- One (1) Alair Radiofrequency Controller Model ATS 200
- One (1) Alair Radiofrequency Controller Accessory Kit Model ATS 201
 - One (1) Footswitch
 - One (1) Power cord

INDICATION FOR USE

The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long acting beta agonists.

MECHANISM OF ACTION

Airway smooth muscle (ASM) consists of muscle tissue within the airway walls in the lung. Contraction of the ASM is a main cause of airway constriction that leads to difficulty in breathing during asthma attacks. Severe asthma patients also experience an increase in ASM mass. This increase, together with inflammation of the airways, combines to thicken airway walls, which decreases the inside diameter of the airways when the ASM contracts. The resulting decrease in airway diameter causes increased resistance to airflow and further contributes to difficulty in breathing during asthma attacks.

The Alair System is used to deliver thermal energy to the airway wall, to heat the tissue in a controlled manner in order to reduce ASM mass. Bronchial thermoplasty is intended to reduce, debulk, or partially eliminate smooth muscle tissue. In preclinical studies (Danek et al. 2004¹, Brown et al. 2005²), the reduction of ASM has been shown to decrease the ability of the airways to constrict/contract, reduce resistance to airflow and responsiveness of the airway, and increase the resting diameter of the airway.

CONTRAINDICATIONS

Patients with the following conditions should not be treated:

- Presence of a pacemaker, internal defibrillator, or other implantable electronic devices,

- Known sensitivity to medications required to perform bronchoscopy, including lidocaine, atropine, and benzodiazepines,
- Patients previously treated with the Alair™ System should not be retreated in the same area(s). No clinical data are available studying the safety and/or effectiveness of repeat treatments.

Patients should not be treated while the following conditions are present:

- Active respiratory infection,
- Asthma exacerbation or changing dose of systemic corticosteroids for asthma (up or down) in the past 14 days,
- Known coagulopathy,
- As with other bronchoscopic procedures, patients should stop taking anticoagulants, antiplatelet agents, aspirin and NSAIDS before the procedure with physician guidance.

WARNINGS

Read this operator's manual in conjunction with the Alair Catheter Model ATS 2-5 directions for use before using the Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System. Failure to follow any instructions or failure to heed any warnings or precautions may result in harm or injury to patient.

Controller/RF Energy Warnings:

- 1 Do not use RF energy in the presence of flammable anesthesia or other flammable gases, flammable liquids (such as skin prepping agents and tinctures), or flammable objects. Non-flammable agents should be used for cleaning and disinfecting whenever possible. Flammable agents used for cleaning, disinfecting, or as solvents of adhesives, should be allowed to evaporate before the application of RF energy.
- 2 While using this device in oxygen-enriched atmospheres, nitrous oxide (N₂O) atmospheres, or in the presence of other oxidizing agents, follow appropriate guidelines for reducing the risk of surgical fires.
- 3 Do not cut a patient return electrode to make it smaller as reducing the size of the patient return electrode may result in patient burns due to high current density.
- 4 Do not wrap the power cord, patient return electrode cord, or Catheter cable around metal objects as hazardous currents may be induced leading to harm or injury (e.g. shock) to the patient or medical personnel, or fire.
- 5 While using this device, the patient should not be allowed to come into contact with grounded metal objects as harm or injury to the patient may result. Antistatic sheeting is recommended to prevent the patient from coming into contact with metal parts which are connected to earth or which have an appreciable capacitance to earth.
- 6 Skin-to-skin contact (e.g. contact between the arms and body of the patient) should be avoided by inserting dry gauze.
- 7 The electrical cord supplied for the Controller must be connected to a properly grounded receptacle. Do not use extension cords or adapters.
- 8 Exposing the Controller to liquids may result in harm or injury (e.g. electrical shock) to the patient and/or user or damage to the Controller.
- 9 Failure of the Controller may result in an unintended increase of output power.
- 10 When the Controller and physiological monitoring equipment are used simultaneously on the patient, any monitoring electrodes should be placed as far as possible from the patient return electrode. Needle monitoring

electrodes are not recommended. In all cases, monitoring systems incorporating high frequency current-limiting devices are recommended.

- 11 The Controller should not be used adjacent to or stacked with other equipment. If adjacent or stacked use is necessary, the Controller should be observed to verify normal operation in the configuration in which it will be used. When RF energy is delivered, conducted and radiated electrical fields may interfere with other electrical medical equipment stacked with or placed adjacent to the Controller.
- 12 Do not open the Controller enclosure or tamper with the Controller in any way. Harm or injury (e.g. electrical shock) or damage to the Controller may result. Contact BSC for repair/replacement.
- 13 Use of the Controller with a non-Alair catheter may result in harm or injury to the patient and/or operator, or may result in product malfunction.
- 14 To avoid the risk of electric shock, this equipment must only be connected to a supply mains with protective earth.
- 15 The use of RF energy can produce unintended neuromuscular stimulation. Appropriate precautions, including continuous monitoring of the patient during treatment, should be taken to minimize the risk of patient injury.
- 16 No modification of this equipment is allowed.

Catheter Warnings:

- 1 Prior to performing the procedure, ensure appropriate training, equipment, medications and staff are in place to handle any potential bronchoscopic, respiratory or anesthesia related emergencies. The Alair System should only be used in a fully equipped bronchoscopy suite with access to full resuscitation equipment to handle hemoptysis, pneumothorax, and other respiratory complications including acute exacerbation of asthma and respiratory failure requiring intubation.
- 2 Do not deliver energy if the Catheter's electrode array is in contact with a metal object. This may result in harm or injury to the patient and/or operator.
- 3 Do not advance the Catheter within the bronchoscope if significant resistance is felt, as this may result in harm or injury to the patient and/or cause damage to the Catheter and/or bronchoscope.
- 4 Do not advance the Catheter into bronchi in which the Catheter cannot be seen under bronchoscopic vision. Advancing the Catheter beyond this region may cause patient harm or injury such as pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum.
- 5 Do not reposition the bronchoscope with the Catheter advanced beyond the distal end of the bronchoscope as this may result in patient harm or injury.
- 6 Use of the Alair Catheter with a non-Alair controller may result in harm or injury to the patient and/or operator, or may result in product malfunction.
- 7 Do not treat the right middle lobe because of the potential susceptibility of the right middle lobe to transient obstruction as a result of inflammation or edema due to certain anatomical characteristics. The narrow diameter of the lobar bronchus and acute take-off angle may create poor conditions of drainage that may cause patient harm or injury such as atelectasis or difficulty in re-inflation (Right Middle Lobe Syndrome).
- 8 No modification of this equipment is allowed.

PRECAUTIONS

Controller/RF Energy Precautions:

- 1 Alair System components and accessories need to be rated for at least the maximum peak output voltage as specified in the Technical Specifications

section of this manual. The Catheter designed for use with this Controller is rated for the maximum peak output voltage as specified in the Technical Specifications section of this manual.

- 2 Use a Valleylab™ E7506, ConMed™ 51-7310, or a similar gel-type patient return electrode that is compliant with the applicable portions of IEC 60601-2-2 and/or CE marked. Use only patient return electrodes indicated for use with adults or patients weighing more than 15 kg (33 lbs).
- 3 Verify that all oxygen circuit connections are leak-free before and during the use of RF energy. Verify that the endotracheal tube (if used) is leak-free, and that the cuff is properly sealed to prevent oxygen leaks.
- 4 The RF delivery tones and indicator lights on the front panel are important safety features. Do not obstruct your view of the Controller's front panel.
- 5 Proper placement of a patient return electrode is required for the use of this device. Ensure the entire patient return electrode is securely placed on a suitably prepared area on the patient in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Check the patient return electrode before and periodically during system use to ensure that it is in firm contact with the skin, especially whenever the patient is repositioned.
- 6 The Catheter cable should be positioned in such a way that contact with the patient return electrode cable or other wires is avoided.
- 7 The Alair™ System needs special precautions regarding Electromagnetic Compatibility ("EMC"). Portable and mobile communications devices can affect proper operation of the Alair System. The Alair System should be installed and used in accordance with the EMC information provided in this Operator's Manual.
- 8 The use of components or accessories other than an Alair Catheter, or as suggested by BSC, may result in increased electromagnetic emissions or decreased electromagnetic immunity of the Controller.
- 9 Follow local governing ordinances and your institution's biohazard procedures regarding disposal of the Alair Controller, Footswitch, and Power Cords.

Catheter Precautions:

- 1 The Alair Catheter is provided sterile and is **SINGLE USE ONLY**. Do not use the Catheter if the package is opened, torn, or damaged. Use of a Catheter from damaged packaging may result in patient harm or injury. **Do not re-sterilize, reprocess or reuse** the Catheter, as this may result in patient harm or injury, transmittal of infectious disease or product malfunction.
- 2 Do not use the Catheter if it comes in contact with a surface that is not aseptic (e.g. floor). This may result in patient infection.
- 3 Do not use the Catheter if it is damaged or irregular. Use of a damaged or irregular Catheter may result in patient harm or injury.
- 4 Do not use the Catheter if the marker bands are not visible.
- 5 Use care when handling the Catheter to avoid kinking the Catheter shaft.
- 6 Avoid deflecting the bronchoscope while the electrode array is within the bend of the bronchoscope's working channel as this may result in damage to the Catheter and failure of the Catheter to operate properly.
- 7 Before inserting or removing the Catheter from the bronchoscope, ensure the electrode array is relaxed. Do not use the Catheter if the electrode array does not expand or relax properly.
- 8 Before delivering energy, make certain that all electrodes are in contact with the airway wall.

- 9 Caution should be taken in patients with the following conditions due to a potential increased risk of adverse events that may be associated with the procedure. Patients with these conditions were not studied in the pivotal trial and the safety of Alair treatment for such patients has not been determined:
 - Post-bronchodilator FEV₁ < 65% predicted.
 - Other respiratory diseases including emphysema, vocal cord dysfunction, mechanical upper airway obstruction, cystic fibrosis or uncontrolled obstructive sleep apnea.
 - Use of short-acting bronchodilator in excess of 12 puffs per day within 48 hours of bronchoscopy (excluding prophylactic use for exercise).
 - Use of oral corticosteroids in excess of 10 milligrams per day for asthma.
 - Increased risk for adverse events associated with bronchoscopy or anesthesia, such as pregnancy, insulin dependent diabetes, epilepsy or other significant co-morbidities, such as uncontrolled coronary artery disease, acute or chronic renal failure, and uncontrolled hypertension.
 - Intubation for asthma, or ICU admission for asthma within the prior 24 months.
 - Any of the following within the past 12 months:
 - i. 4 or more lower respiratory tract infections (LRTI)
 - ii. 3 or more hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms
 - iii. 4 or more OCS pulses for asthma exacerbation
- 10 The Alair System should only be used by clinicians who are experienced in bronchoscopy and have undergone adequate training with the device.
- 11 The Alair System should only be used in patients stable enough to undergo bronchoscopy in the judgment of their clinician.
- 12 Follow local governing ordinances and your institution's biohazard procedures regarding disposal of the Alair Catheter and patient return electrode.

CLINICAL STUDIES

Objectives

The pivotal study was a multi-center, randomized, double-blind, sham-controlled study to demonstrate the safety and effectiveness of the Alair System in a population of subjects with severe asthma.

Effectiveness Endpoints

The primary effectiveness endpoint was the difference between treatment (Alair) and control (Sham) groups in the change in the Asthma Quality of Life Questionnaire (AQLQ) score between baseline and the average of 6-, 9-, and 12-month follow-up visits (integrated AQLQ score). Other endpoints included: rates of severe asthma exacerbations, proportions of patients with severe asthma exacerbations, and days lost from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. In addition, several safety endpoints were considered for effectiveness; these endpoints included rates of asthma (multiple symptoms)* adverse events, Unscheduled Physician Office visits for respiratory symptoms, Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms, and Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms.

* "Asthma (multiple symptoms)" is defined as occurrence or worsening of shortness of breath, wheeze, cough, productive cough, or some combination of these.

Methods

This was a multicenter, randomized (2 Alair, 1 Sham), double-blind, sham-controlled clinical trial comparing the effects of treatment with the Alair System to a Sham treatment in subjects that were optimized to conventional therapy of inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) and long-acting β_2 -agonists (LABA). All subjects included in

the Study were taking ICS (> 1000 µg beclomethasone or equivalent per day) and LABA (≥ 100 µg salmeterol or equivalent per day), and were still symptomatic.

Subjects in the Alair and Sham groups were administered the Alair treatment and Sham bronchoscopies, respectively, by an unblinded bronchoscopy team in 3 separate bronchoscopy sessions. Each bronchoscopy session was separated by at least 3 weeks. All bronchoscopy sessions were administered under local anesthesia with sedation. Subjects had follow-up visits with blinded asthma assessment teams at 6-weeks, 12-weeks, 6-months, 9-months, and 12-months after the final bronchoscopy session.

All subjects were prescribed to take 50 mg of oral prednisone or prednisolone (or equivalent) each day for 5 days covering the 3 days before the bronchoscopy session, the day of the bronchoscopy session, and the day after the bronchoscopy session (prophylactic indication).

Statistical Plan

Primary and secondary endpoints, as well as adverse events were analyzed using Bayesian statistics. The Posterior Probability of Superiority was calculated for the primary and secondary endpoints, as well as safety outcomes.

Patient Population

Enrollment was limited to patients with severe persistent asthma who were still symptomatic despite being managed on conventional therapy of high dose ICS and LABA. Subjects may have been taking up to 10 milligrams of oral corticosteroids per day. Study subjects were required to meet the following patient selection criteria:

Key Entry Criteria

Inclusion

1. Adult; age 18-65 years.
2. Asthma requiring regular maintenance medication that includes inhaled corticosteroids (greater than 1000 µg beclomethasone per day or equivalent) and long-acting β_2 -agonists (at least 100 µg salmeterol per day or equivalent), with or without other asthma medications. Oral corticosteroids at a dosage of up to, but not greater than 10 mg per day, or 20 mg every other day are acceptable.
3. Asthma Quality of Life Questionnaire Score during the Baseline Phase of 6.25 or less.
4. Pre-bronchodilator forced expiratory volume in one second $\geq 60\%$ predicted (after patients stabilized on inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting β_2 -agonists during the Baseline Phase).
5. Non-smoker x 1 year or greater (if former smoker, less than 10 pack years total smoking history).

Exclusion

1. Post-bronchodilator FEV₁ $< 65\%$ predicted.
2. Three or more hospitalizations for exacerbations of asthma in the previous year; OR a history of life-threatening asthma, defined by past intubations for asthma, or intensive care unit admission for asthma within the prior 24 months.
3. History of recurrent lower respiratory tract infection requiring antibiotics (more than 3 in the past 12-Months).
4. History of recurrent oral steroid use for asthma (4 or more pulses of oral steroids in the past 12-Months).

Demographics

A total of 297 subjects between the ages of 18 and 65 were enrolled and randomized (2 Alair: 1 Sham) in this study. One hundred and ninety (190) subjects received the Alair treatment and 98 subjects received the Sham control treatment (Intent-to-Treat population). The Sham procedure was identical to the Alair procedure except that no energy was delivered through the Catheter.

There were no statistical differences in demographic measures between the Alair and Sham groups. Subject demographics are described in Table 1.

	Alair (n=190)	Sham (n=98)
Age (years) (Mean \pm SD)	41 \pm 12	41 \pm 12
Gender		
Male	81 (43%)	38 (39%)
Female	109 (57%)	60 (61%)
Race/Ethnicity		
Caucasian	151 (80%)	72 (74%)
African American / Black	19 (10%)	15 (15%)
Hispanic	6 (3%)	4 (4%)
Asian	4 (2%)	1 (1%)
Other	10 (5%)	6 (6%)
Height (cm) (Mean \pm SD)	167 \pm 9	167 \pm 10
Weight (kg) (Mean \pm SD)	82 \pm 18	82 \pm 20

Table 1: Subject Demographics (Intent-to-Treat Population)

Effectiveness Results

Effectiveness analyses were performed for both the Intent-to-Treat (ITT) population and Per-Protocol (PP) population. The ITT population consisted of all randomized subjects who have been administered at least one bronchoscopy. The PP population excluded all subjects in the ITT population who met any of the following criteria:

- Have taken any interfering concomitant medications.
- Have undergone other interfering treatments.
- Did not attend one of the 6-, 9-, 12-month visits, with the exception of a discontinuation from the Study due to an adverse event related to Study treatment.
- Had missed one or more bronchoscopy procedures.

Effectiveness Endpoints

Although the clinical study was powered only for the primary effectiveness endpoint (see below), several effectiveness endpoints and safety endpoints that could also be considered effectiveness endpoints demonstrated clinically meaningful differences in favor of the Alair group compared to the Sham group. The effectiveness endpoints were rates of severe asthma exacerbations, proportions of patients with severe asthma exacerbations, and days lost from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. The safety endpoints considered for effectiveness were rates of asthma, emergency room visits for respiratory symptoms, and hospitalization rates for respiratory symptoms.

Steroid Exacerbations* (Severe Exacerbations Requiring Systemic Corticosteroids) (ITT Population)

During the Post-Treatment Phase, the severe exacerbation rate for the Steroid Exacerbations was 0.48 exacerbations/subject/year in the Alair group and 0.70 exacerbations/subject/year in the Sham group [95% CI (Sham - Alair): -0.031, 0.520]. During the Post-Treatment Phase, the proportion of subjects experiencing Steroid Exacerbations was 26% in the Alair group and 40% in the Sham group [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 2.1%, 25.1%].

Steroid Exacerbation rates (annualized rate) and proportion of patients experiencing Severe Exacerbations for the Post-Treatment Phase are presented graphically in Figure 2.

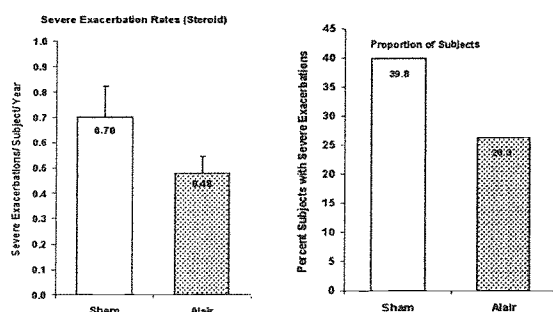


Figure 2: Severe Exacerbations during the Post-Treatment Phase

* **Steroid Exacerbations** = Exacerbations treated with oral or intravenous corticosteroids, OR a doubling of the baseline inhaled corticosteroid dose for at least 3 days, OR any temporary increase in the dosage of oral corticosteroids for a subject taking maintenance oral corticosteroids at Study entry.

Annualized rates of exacerbations per subject are extrapolated from the 46 week Post-Treatment Phase from 6 weeks after the last bronchoscopy procedure to the 12 month follow-up visit.

Days Lost from Work, School, or Other Daily Activities due to Asthma Symptoms (ITT Population)

During the Post-Treatment Phase, subjects in the Alair group lost an average of 1.3 days/year/subject from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms, compared to the Sham group that lost 3.9 days/year/subject (annualized rates per subject are extrapolated from the 46 week Post-Treatment Phase from 6 weeks after the last bronchoscopy procedure to the 12 month follow-up visit) [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 0.425, 6.397].

Safety Endpoints that Demonstrated Effectiveness

Measures such as Emergency Room visits and Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms are generally considered to be important measures of safety, especially if an intervention results in an increase in the rate of one or more of these events. During longer-term follow-up (> 6 weeks after the last Alair treatment), there was a reduction in asthma (multiple symptoms) adverse events [95% CI (Sham - Alair): -0.01, 0.001], Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 0.11, 0.83], and Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms (event rate per group) [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 0.025, 0.172], presented graphically in Figure 3.

There was a reduction in the proportion of subjects having asthma (multiple symptoms) adverse events [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 4.0%, 27.3%], and in the proportion of subjects having Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms in the Alair group (3.7% in the Alair group compared to 15.3% in the Sham group) [95% CI (Sham - Alair): 4.6%, 19.7%].

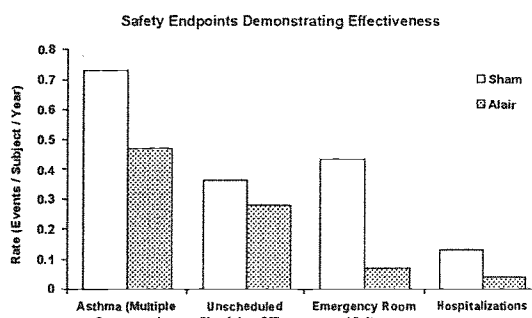


Figure 3: Safety Endpoints demonstrating Effectiveness (ITT Population)

Primary Effectiveness Endpoint – Integrated AQLQ Score

The difference between the Alair and Sham groups in the average change in AQLQ score from Baseline at the 6-, 9-, and 12-month follow-up visits was 0.210 [95% CI (Alair - Sham): -0.025, 0.445]. The pre-specified Posterior Probability of Superiority for the difference between the groups was 96.4%. For the ITT population, the difference between the groups had a Posterior Probability of Superiority of 96.0%, and for the PP population, the difference between the groups had a Posterior Probability of Superiority of 97.9%, demonstrating an improvement in the Asthma Quality of Life in the Alair group compared to Sham.

The results for the change from Baseline of the Integrated AQLQ score for the Intent-to-Treat and Per Protocol populations are summarized in Table 2.

Population	Difference Between Groups in Integrated AQLQ Score (Posterior Mean, 95% CI)	Posterior Probability of Superiority (%)
ITT (Intent-to-Treat) (Alair N=190, Sham N=98)	0.210 (-0.025, 0.445)	96.0
PP (Per Protocol) (Alair N=173, Sham N=95)	0.244 (0.009, 0.478)	97.9

Table 2: Primary Effectiveness Endpoint: Integrated AQLQ Score

ADVERSE EVENTS IN PIVOTAL STUDY

Patient Population

The Alair™ System was evaluated in a randomized, double-blind, sham-controlled, multi-center clinical study – the Asthma Intervention Research 2 (AIR2) Trial. A total of 297 subjects with severe persistent asthma who were still symptomatic despite being managed on conventional therapy of high dose ICS and LABA were randomized – 196 subjects in the Alair group and 101 subjects in the Sham group. (See the Clinical Data section for key entry criteria.) The Sham procedure was identical to the Alair procedure except that no energy was delivered to the Catheter in the sham procedure.

Safety analyses were performed for the Intent-to-Treat (ITT) population (288 subjects) that consisted of all randomized subjects who have been administered at least one bronchoscopy.

Observed Adverse Events

The safety of the Alair™ System was assessed by comparing adverse event profiles of the Alair and Sham group subjects. Adverse event profiles are compared for the Treatment Phase (day of first bronchoscopy procedure to 6 weeks after the last bronchoscopy procedure) and Post-Treatment Phase (6 weeks after the last bronchoscopy to the 12 month follow-up visit).

Adverse events (whether considered procedure-related or not procedure related by the investigator) occurring with $\geq 3\%$ incidence in the Alair group are presented for 288 patients in Table 3.

Adverse Event	Treatment*		Post-Treatment**	
	Alair (N=190) %	Sham (N=98) %	Alair (N=187) %	Sham (N=98) %
Average duration of period (days)	84		322	
Ear, Nose, and Throat				
Upper respiratory tract infection	20	11	30	26
Nasopharyngitis	5	7	11	5
Throat irritation	5	12	1	3
Viral upper respiratory tract infection	4	2	6	7
Sinusitis	3	5	6	7
Acute Sinusitis	3	2	4	8
Pharyngolaryngeal pain	3	5	1	2
Allergic rhinitis	2	3	4	4
Rhinitis	2	0	4	6
Lower Respiratory				
Asthma (Multiple Symptoms)	52	39	27	43
Wheezing	15	6	4	3
Chest pain	14	13	3	1
Cough	12	14	3	5
Dyspnea	11	6	2	1
Chest discomfort	9	10	2	1
Lower respiratory tract infection	8	2	3	6
Productive cough	7	9	3	4
Atelectasis	5	0	0	0
Bronchitis	4	2	7	5
Hemoptysis	3	0	0	0
Neurology				
Headaches	14	9	5	3
Anxiety	4	0	1	2

Adverse Event (Continued)	Treatment*		Post-Treatment**	
	Alair (N=190) %	Sham (N=98) %	Alair (N=187) %	Sham (N=98) %
Dyspepsia	4	2	2	4
Nausea	3	4	1	1
Non-site specific				
Influenza	4	2	4	12
Pyrexia (fever)	4	2	0	1
Other				
Back pain	5	6	3	5
Hypertension	3	2	3	3
Urinary tract infection	1	1	3	1

Table 3: Adverse Events with $\geq 3\%$ Incidence (% of subjects) in the Alair Group

* Treatment phase represents adverse events reported between the first bronchoscopy and 6-weeks post last bronchoscopy.

** Post-Treatment phase represents adverse events reported between 6-weeks post last bronchoscopy and the 12 month visit.

Respiratory adverse events occurring in either the Treatment Phase or in the first year Post-Treatment at a rate of $< 3\%$ and $\geq 1\%$ (whether considered procedure-related or not procedure-related by the investigator) in the Alair group included abnormal breath sounds, acute bronchitis, bronchial obstruction, bronchospasm, discolored sputum (blood-tinged sputum), epistaxis, hypoxia, increased upper airway secretion, nasal congestion, operative hemorrhage, pneumonia, pulmonary congestion, rhinorrhea, viral lower respiratory tract infection, and viral pharyngitis.

Non-respiratory adverse events occurring in either the Treatment Phase or in the first year Post-Treatment at a rate of $< 3\%$ and $\geq 1\%$ (whether considered procedure-related or not procedure-related by the investigator) in the Alair group included abdominal pain, acne, allergic dermatitis, arthralgia, back injury, candidiasis, conjunctivitis, cystitis, depression, diarrhea, dizziness, fatigue, food poisoning, gastritis, gastroenteritis, gastroesophageal reflux disease, gastrointestinal infection, heart palpitations, herpes simplex, hiccups, hyperglycemia, hypersensitivity, hypotension, injury, insomnia, intervertebral disc protrusion, joint sprain, ligament rupture, migraine, muscle strain, musculoskeletal pain, nephrolithiasis, oral candidiasis, pain in extremity, peripheral edema, procedural pain, rash, skin laceration, tendonitis, tonsillitis, tooth abscess, tooth extraction, tooth infection, toothache, tremor, viral tonsillitis, and vomiting.

There may be other risks associated with the procedure and attendant anesthesia and medications. Please consult the manufacturers' directions for use for the equipment and medications used in association with the bronchial thermoplasty procedure for relevant indications, warnings, precautions, and adverse events.

During the Treatment Phase in the AIR2 Trial, there was a transient increase in respiratory adverse events, including asthma (multiple symptoms), upper respiratory tract infection, atelectasis, lower respiratory tract infection, wheezing, hemoptysis, and anxiety in the Alair group compared to the Sham group. There was a lower incidence of throat irritation in the Alair group compared to the Sham group. There were 7 instances of hemoptysis defined as > 5.0 mL (1.3% of bronchoscopies) of

which 2 occurred on the day of the procedure, 2 occurred within 3 days, 2 occurred at 2 weeks, and one occurred on Day 31 after the procedure. The greatest amount of hemoptysis observed was a cumulative total of 150 mL that occurred over 5 days and was treated with bronchial artery embolization.

During the Treatment Phase (~12 weeks period), the rate of Unscheduled Physician Office visits (events / subject / 12 weeks) in the Alair group was 0.230 compared to 0.133 in the Sham group. The rate of Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms (events / subject / 12 weeks) was 0.086 in the Alair group compared to 0.028 in the Sham group. The rate of Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms (events / subject / 12 weeks) was 0.062 in the Alair group compared to 0.075 in the Sham group.

During the Post-Treatment Phase in the AIR2 Trial, there was a lower incidence of respiratory symptoms in the Alair group compared to the Sham group, including a 36% reduction in asthma (multiple symptoms) events and proportion of subjects with asthma (multiple symptoms) events. There was also a lower incidence of influenza, and a greater incidence of nasopharyngitis, in the Alair group compared to the Sham group.

High Resolution Computed Tomography (HRCT) Results

In the 150 subjects (100 Alair group and 50 Sham group) assigned to HRCT scan examinations, at 1-year, there were no difference in signs of gas trapping or consolidation and there was no evidence of bronchiectasis. A difference was seen in bronchial wall thickening without gas trapping which occurred only in the Sham subjects (4%).

Summary of Clinical Findings

Results from the clinical study which evaluated the effectiveness and safety of the Alair™ System in subjects with severe asthma demonstrated that Alair treatment resulted in clinically significant reductions in severe exacerbations that required systemic steroids, the percent of subjects experiencing the severe exacerbations, the number of Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms, the percent of subjects experiencing Emergency Room visits for respiratory symptoms, Hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms, and days lost from school/work/other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. Although bronchial thermoplasty was associated with an increased rate of respiratory adverse events during the Treatment Phase (primarily related to asthma), in the Post-Treatment Phase, a smaller proportion of patients treated with bronchial thermoplasty experienced respiratory adverse events, including asthma (multiple symptoms).

INSTALLATION

Inspect the Controller for any signs of physical damage. If physical damage is found, do not use. Please contact BSC for repair/replacement.

Preparing the Alair Controller for Use

The Controller should be placed on a sturdy cart, table, or platform. Provide at least four to six inches of space around the sides and top of the Controller to allow adequate ventilation. It is normal for the top and rear panel to be warm under continuous use.

Power Cord

The Controller is intended for use with a Boston Scientific approved power cord. Do not use extension cords or adapters. The power cord is to be used to isolate the Alair Controller from the supply mains. Do not position the Alair Controller so that it is difficult to disconnect.

Proper Grounding

To ensure patient safety, the Controller must be properly grounded. The ground wire in the power cord is connected to the Controller chassis and ensures that no dangerous currents will flow from the Controller chassis in the event of internal electrical failure.

Routine Inspections and Maintenance

The power cord assembly should be periodically checked for damage to the insulation or connectors. In the event that the Controller requires repair/replacement, please contact BSC. If needed, only your institution's biomedical engineering representatives should replace the Controller fuses. Routine maintenance and calibration of the Controller are not required.

Cleaning and Disinfecting Instructions

Disconnect the power cord before cleaning or disinfecting the unit. Use a mild non-abrasive detergent or cleaning/disinfecting solution and damp cloth to clean the Controller enclosure, front panel, and power cable. Do not allow fluids to enter the enclosure, power cable connections, or component/accessory connections. Do not attempt to clean the unit while it is plugged into an electrical outlet.

Note: Do not spray or pour liquid onto the Controller. Exposure of the Controller to liquids may result in electrical shock to the user or damage to the Controller.

Front Panel Indicators, Display, and Receptacles

A description of the front panel indicators, control buttons and their functions is given below. Please refer to Figure 4 for the location of each item on the front panel.

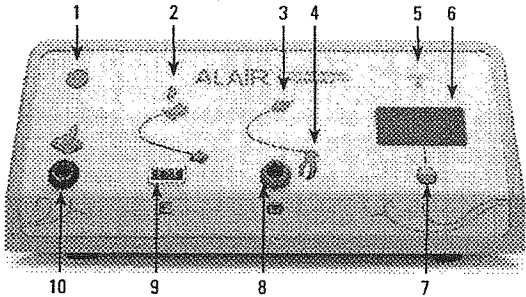


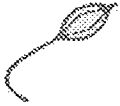





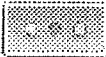



Figure 4. Alair Controller Front Panel

INDICATORS	
	<p>1. Status Indicator – This indicator gives the user a signal about the overall readiness of the Alair System. When the Status Indicator light is <i>green</i> the Controller is in READY mode and able to deliver RF energy.</p> <p>When the Status Indicator light is <i>amber</i> the Controller is in STANDBY mode and is not capable of delivering RF energy. More detail on the Controller modes is provided below.</p>
	<p>2. Patient Return Electrode Icon – When the Patient Return Electrode Icon light is <i>amber</i> the user should ensure that the patient return electrode gel pad is correctly applied to the patient.</p> <p>After ensuring proper electrode placement, proceed by re-expanding the Catheter electrode array, taking care to ensure proper contact of all electrodes with the airway wall, and ensuring minimal movement of the electrode array during delivery of RF energy; then, continue.</p>

INDICATORS (continued)	
	<p>3. Catheter Electrode Array Icon – When the Catheter Electrode Array Icon light is <i>amber</i> the user should re-expand the Catheter electrode array, taking care to ensure proper placement and contact of all electrodes with the airway wall and ensuring minimal movement of the electrode array during delivery of RF energy; then, continue.</p>
	<p>4. Catheter Handle Icon – When the Catheter Handle Icon is flashing <i>red</i> the Catheter should be discarded and replaced with a new Catheter.</p> <p>The only exception to this instruction occurs if the Catheter array has been exposed to a low (<16 °C) temperature. In these limited cases (e.g., cleaning the array in iced saline or exposing a wet array to cold air resulting in evaporative cooling), the electrode array should be returned to room temperature and the catheter connector should be unplugged and re-connected to the Controller. If the Catheter Handle alarm persists, replace Catheter and continue with the bronchial thermoplasty procedure.</p>
	<p>5. RF Energy Icon – When the RF Energy Icon light is <i>blue</i> the Controller is delivering RF energy. This icon lights only while RF energy is being delivered.</p>
DISPLAY	
	<p>6. Activation Counter Digital Display – Displays the number of complete activations performed during device use.</p>
	<p>7. Activation Counter Button – When the counter button is depressed and released, the counter displays the number of incomplete activations for 5 seconds.</p> <p>When the counter button is depressed and held for 4 seconds, the complete and incomplete activation counters are reset to zero.</p> <p>Note: The activation counter will not reset during the display of incomplete activations. Reset the activation counter only during the display of complete activations.</p>
RECEPTACLES	
	<p>8. Catheter Receptacle – The <i>gray</i> receptacle accepts Catheter connectors and is keyed to ensure proper orientation. This connector is isolated from ground and AC mains to protect the patient from electrical hazards.</p>
	<p>9. Patient Return Electrode Receptacle – This receptacle accepts any standard, 2-pin patient return electrode connector. This connector is isolated from ground and AC mains to protect the patient from electrical hazards.</p>
	<p>10. Footswitch Receptacle – The <i>black</i> footswitch receptacle accepts the footswitch connector and is keyed to insure proper orientation. A single activation of the footswitch will turn the RF output ON if it was OFF, and turn the RF output OFF if it was ON.</p>

Rear Panel Indicators and Functions

A description of the rear panel indicators and functions is given below. Please refer to Figure 5 for the location of each item on the rear panel.

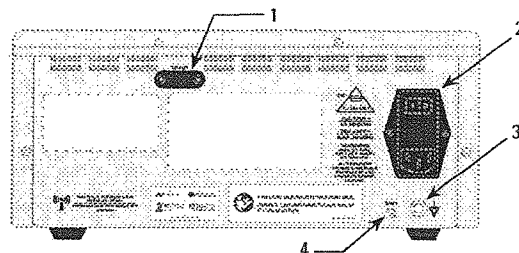


Figure 5. Alair™ Controller Rear Panel

1. **Serial Communication Port** – For service by authorized personnel only. Not for use by user.
2. **Power Entry Module** – This module contains both the ON/OFF switch (I/O) and the power connection.
3. **Equipotentiality Connector** – Provides a means of securely linking the chassis of the Controller to the potential equalization system at the installation site.
4. **Program Memory Enable Screw** – For service by authorized personnel only. Not for use by user.

OPERATIONAL INSTRUCTIONS

Alair Controller Power-Up

1. Plug the Controller into a grounded receptacle. Do not use extension cords or adapters.
2. Turn the power on using the ON/OFF switch that is located on the Power Entry Module on the rear panel of the Controller (see Figure 5 above). The Controller will perform a number of internal self-tests: a tone will sound and all indicators will light for approximately 1 second. Do not use the Controller if any of the indicators fails to light or this tone is not heard. In the event of malfunction, contact BSC for repair or replacement.
3. Once the self-test is completed, the Controller will enter STANDBY mode with the digital display showing zero [0] and the Status Indicator illuminated *amber* (refer to Figure 4 above for the location of all controls and indicators).
4. The Status Indicator light will transition from *amber* to *green* once all component and accessory connections have been made.
5. If the Controller goes directly into FAULT mode with all lights flashing upon start-up (see the Controller Modes section below for explanation of FAULT mode conditions), turn the Controller power switch OFF and ON again. If the Controller continues to enter the FAULT mode contact BSC for repair or replacement information.

Connection of Alair™ System Components and Accessories



1. Connect a suitable, 2-pin patient return electrode to the corresponding electrode receptacle on the front panel of the Controller following the manufacturer's DFU (see illustration at left). This receptacle has a patient return electrode icon directly above it. Place the patient return electrode securely on the patient in accordance with the patient return electrode manufacturer's instructions.



2. Connect the **black** footswitch cable connector supplied with the Controller to the matching **black** footswitch receptacle on the front panel of the Controller (see illustration at left). The appropriate receptacle has a footswitch icon directly above it. Ensure that the connector is securely attached to the Alair Controller before proceeding.



3. Connect the **grey** Catheter electrical cable to the matching **grey** Catheter receptacle on the Controller front panel (see illustration at left). The appropriate receptacle has a Catheter icon directly above it. Ensure that the connector is securely attached to the Alair Controller before proceeding.



4. If all the component and accessory connections have been made and the Controller has been powered ON, the Status Indicator light will be **green** (see illustration at left). If the Catheter, or footswitch, or return electrode connections described above have **not** been completed, the Controller will remain in the STANDBY mode and the Status Indicator light will remain **amber**.

Alair Controller Modes

SELF-TEST Mode – This mode lasts approximately 2 seconds and occurs automatically upon turning on the power to the Controller. The Controller performs a number of internal tests to verify correct functioning of the Controller, including:

- the function of all displays and the "RF On" tone
- the accuracy of the power, voltage, and current measurements
- the return pad current measurement accuracy
- the A/D calibration accuracy
- RAM functionality
- Firmware cyclical redundancy checks on the software

All of the indicators should light and the digital display should show [188]. A long tone should be heard during the SELF-TEST. This mode automatically transitions to either STANDBY or READY mode when it is completed.

STANDBY Mode – The STANDBY mode indicates that the Controller has passed its SELF-TEST and is standing by for component and accessory connections to be made in preparation for use. The Status Indicator light is **amber** when the Controller is in STANDBY mode. This mode is entered automatically after the SELF-TEST mode if any of the components or accessories (Catheter, footswitch, or patient return electrode) are not connected to the Controller.

READY Mode – The READY mode indicates that all required component and accessory connections (Catheter, footswitch, and patient return electrode) have been made and that the Controller is ready to deliver energy. The Status Indicator light is **green** when the Controller is in READY mode.

RF ON Mode – RF energy is being delivered in this mode. The RF Energy Icon light is **blue** when RF energy is being delivered. When the footswitch is depressed a short tone signals the start of RF energy delivery, and an intermittent dual tone sounds at 2-second intervals during RF energy delivery. The Controller delivers energy until the activation is complete or until the footswitch is depressed a second time, discontinuing RF energy delivery. After the completion of each activation, a long tone signals the termination of RF energy delivery and the Controller returns to the READY mode.

FAULT Mode – This mode indicates that a safety algorithm has been triggered or a non-recoverable error has occurred. In the case of a non-recoverable error, the digital display will flash [188] and all other indicators will flash. A non-recoverable error can only be reset by turning the Controller off, then on again. If FAULT mode persists, please contact BSC for repair or replacement information.

ALAIR CONTROLLER SHUT DOWN

Turn the power off using the ON/OFF switch that is located on the Power Entry Module on the rear panel of the Controller (See Figure 5).

MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING

Routine maintenance and calibration of the Controller are not required since the SELF-TEST Mode, activated automatically upon turning on the power to the Controller, verifies correct functioning of the Controller. The power cord assembly should be periodically checked for damage to the insulation or connectors.

In the event that the Controller requires repair or replacement, please contact BSC. Only a qualified biomedical engineering representative at your institution should replace the Controller fuses.

If you encounter problems while using the Controller, check the following:

Problem/Error Message	Check the following
Controller does not power on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the switch at the rear of the Controller is in the "ON" position • Check power cord connection at the rear of the Controller • Check that the Controller power cord is connected to an appropriate power supply (see the Technical Specifications Section). • Have a qualified biomedical engineering representative at your institution check the Controller fuses or contact BSC for repair or replacement information.
The status indicator does not transition from the Standby Mode (<i>amber</i>) to the Ready Mode (<i>green</i>)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the Alair Catheter, patient return electrode and footswitch are all properly connected to the Controller
RF Energy is not delivered when the footswitch pedal is depressed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the Controller is powered on • Ensure that the Alair Catheter, the patient return electrode and footswitch are all properly connected to the Controller

Problem/Error Message	Check the following
Catheter icon on Controller is flashing <i>red</i> and the Controller is not responding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the Alair™ Catheter with a new Alair Catheter The only exception to this instruction occurs if the Catheter array has been exposed to a low (<16 °C) temperature. In these limited cases (e.g., cleaning the array in iced saline or exposing a wet array to cold air resulting in evaporative cooling), the electrode array should be returned to room temperature and the catheter connector should be unplugged and re-connected to the Controller. If the Catheter Handle alarm persists, replace Catheter and continue with the bronchial thermoplasty procedure.
If any of these problems persist, please contact BSC for repair or replacement information.	

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

According to the IEC 60601-1 standard for medical devices, the Controller is classified as Class 1 equipment.

RF OUTPUT (not user adjustable)

Waveform - 461 kHz, sinusoidal

Maximum Output Values

- Power: 25 Watts; limited by software to 18 watts
- Voltage: 85 Vrms, 120 V peak, 240 V peak-to-peak
- Current: 0.90 Arms

Maximum Power Output over the Range of Load Resistance (see Figure 6): Actual power delivered will be automatically adjusted by the Controller based on temperature control algorithms.

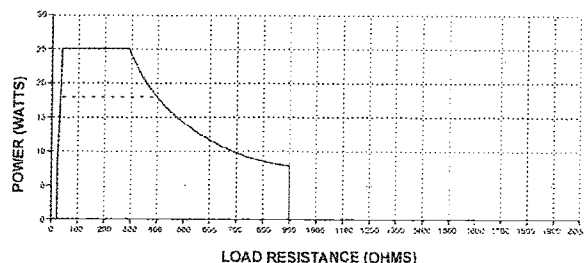


Figure 6: Maximum Power Given Load Resistance

Shutdown Limits

- Measured Temperature: < 10 °C or > 15 °C above set temperature
- Measured Impedance: < 25Ω, or > 900Ω

Mechanical Specifications

- Size: 5.3 in x 12.3 in x 15.4 in (13.5 cm x 31.2 cm x 39.1 cm)
- Measured Temperature Accuracy: $\pm 0.5\% \pm 2.5\text{ °C}$
- Weight: 12.5 lbs. (5.6 kg)

Environmental Storage and Transport Conditions

- Storage temperature: 10 °C to 40 °C
- Transportation conditions: -40 °C to 70 °C
- Ensure that the unit is at room temperature for one hour before use if unit has been exposed to extreme temperature conditions

Operational Conditions

- Temperature: 18 °C to 40 °C
- Humidity: 30% to 75% (non-condensing)
- Pressure: ≥ 800 millibars

AC Input Specifications


- 100 – 120 V~ 50/60 Hz, 1.0 A
- 220 – 240 V~ 50 Hz, 0.5 A

Replace mains fuses as marked: 1.25 A/250 V, T-lag, 5x20 mm

EMC TEST LEVELS, COMPLIANCE LEVELS, AND ENVIRONMENTAL GUIDANCE

Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration: Electromagnetic Immunity			
The Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The user of the Controller should assure that it is used in such an environment.			
Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	EMC Environmental Guidance
Electrostatic discharge (ESD) IEC 61000-4-2	± 6 kV contact ± 8 kV air	± 6 kV contact ± 8 kV air	Floors should be wood, concrete or ceramic tile. If floors are covered with synthetic material, the relative humidity should be at least 30%.
Electrical fast transient/burst IEC 61000-4-4	± 2 kV for power supply lines ± 1 kV for input/output lines	± 2 kV for power supply lines NA - no input/output lines	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.
Surge IEC 61000-4-5	± 1 kV differential mode ± 2 kV common mode	± 1 kV differential mode ± 2 kV common mode	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.

Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration: Electromagnetic Immunity (Continued)			
The Alair™ RF Controller Model ATS 200 is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or the user of the Controller should assure that it is used in such an environment			
Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	EMC Environmental Guidance
Voltage dips, short interruptions and voltage variations on power supply input lines IEC 61000-4-11	<5% U_T (>95% dip in U_T) for 0,5 cycle 40% U_T (60% dip in U_T) for 5 cycles 70% U_T (30% dip in U_T) for 25 cycles <5% U_T (>95% dip in U_T) for 5 sec	<5% U_T (>95% dip in U_T) for 0,5 cycle 40% U_T (60% dip in U_T) for 5 cycles 70% U_T (30% dip in U_T) for 25 cycles <5% U_T (>95% dip in U_T) for 5 sec	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. If the user of the Controller requires continued operation during power interruptions, it is recommended that the Controller be powered from an uninterruptible power supply or a battery.
Power frequency (50/60 Hz) magnetic field IEC 61000-4-8	3 A/m	3 A/m	Power frequency magnetic fields should be at levels characteristic of a typical location in a typical commercial or hospital environment.
NOTE U_T is the a.c. mains voltage prior to application of the test level.			

Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration: Electromagnetic Immunity (Continued)			
Immunity Test	IEC 60601 Test Level	Compliance Level	EMC Environmental Guidance
Conducted RF IEC 61000-4-6	3 V _{rms} 150 kHz to 80 MHz	3 V _{rms}	<p>Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be used no closer to any part of the Controller, including cables, than the recommended separation distance calculated from the equation applicable to the frequency of the transmitter.</p> <p>Recommended separation distance:</p> $d = [1.17]\sqrt{P} \text{ MHz to 800 MHz}$ $d = [1.17]\sqrt{P} \text{ MHz to 800 MHz}$ $d = [2.33]\sqrt{P} \text{ MHz to 2.5 GHz}$ <p>where <i>P</i> is the maximum output power rating of the transmitter in watts (W) according to the transmitter manufacturer and <i>d</i> is the recommended separation distance in meters (m).</p> <p>Field strengths from fixed RF transmitters, as determined by an electromagnetic site survey,* should be less than the compliance level in each frequency range^b.</p> <p>Interference may occur in the vicinity of equipment marked with the following symbol: </p>
Radiated RF IEC 61000-4-3	3 V/m 80 MHz to 2.5 GHz	3 V/m	
<p>NOTE 1 At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the higher frequency range applies.</p> <p>NOTE 2 These guidelines may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects and people.</p>			
<p>^a Field strengths from fixed transmitters, such as base stations for radio (cellular/cordless) telephones and land mobile radios, amateur radio, AM and FM radio broadcast and TV broadcast cannot be predicted theoretically with accuracy. To assess the electromagnetic environment due to fixed RF transmitters, an electromagnetic site survey should be considered. If the measured field strength in the location in which the Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 or any of its components or accessories are used exceeds the applicable RF compliance level above, the Controller should be observed to verify normal operation. If abnormal performance is observed, additional measures may be necessary, such as reorienting or relocating components or accessories or the entire Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System.</p> <p>^b Over the frequency range 150 kHz to 80 MHz, field strengths should be less than 3 V/m.</p>			

Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration: Electromagnetic Emissions		
The Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or the user of the Controller should assure that it is used in such an environment.		
Emissions Test	Compliance Level	EMC Environmental Guidance
RF Emissions CISPR 11	Group 1	The Controller must emit electromagnetic energy in order to perform its intended function. Nearby electronic equipment may be affected.
RF Emissions CISPR 11	Class A	The Controller is suitable for use in all establishments, other than domestic and those directly connected to the public low-voltage power supply network that supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.
Harmonic emissions IEC 61000-3-2	Class A	
Voltage fluctuations / flicker emissions IEC 61000-3-3	Complies	

IEC Recommended Separation of RF Communication Equipment			
Recommended separation distances between portable and mobile RF communications equipment and the Alair™ RF Controller Model ATS 200 System			
The Alair RF Controller Model ATS 200 is intended for use in an electromagnetic environment in which radiated RF disturbances are controlled. The customer or the user of the Controller can help prevent electromagnetic interference by maintaining a minimum distance between portable and mobile RF communications equipment (transmitters) and the Controller as recommended below, according to the maximum output power of the communications equipment.			
Rated maximum output power of transmitter W	Separation distance according to frequency of transmitter M		
	150 kHz to 80 MHz $d = \left[\frac{3.5}{V_1} \right] \sqrt{P}$	80 MHz to 800 MHz $d = \left[\frac{3.5}{V_1} \right] \sqrt{P}$	800 MHz to 2.5 GHz $d = \left[\frac{7}{E_1} \right] \sqrt{P}$
0.01	0.12	0.12	0.23
0.1	0.37	0.37	0.74
1	1.17	1.17	2.33
10	3.69	3.69	7.38
100	11.67	11.67	23.34

For transmitters rated at a maximum output power not listed above, the recommended separation distance d in meters (m) can be determined using the equation applicable to the frequency of the transmitter, where P is the maximum output power rating of the transmitter in watts (W) according to the transmitter manufacturer.

NOTE 1 At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the separation distance for the higher frequency range applies.

NOTE 2 These guidelines may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects and people.

NOTE 3 V_1 is 3 V_{ms} per the conducted emissions compliance level indicated in the table above

NOTE 4 E_1 is 3 V/m per the radiated emissions compliance level indicated in the table above

REFERENCES

- 1 Danek CJ, Lombard CM, Dungworth DL, Cox PG, Miller JD, Biggs MJ, Keast TM, Loomas BE, Wizeman WJ, Hogg JC, Leff AR. Reduction in airway hyperresponsiveness to methacholine by the application of RF energy in dogs. J Appl Physiol. 2004; 97(5):1946-53.
- 2 Brown RH, Wizeman W, Danek C, Mitzner W. Effect of bronchial thermoplasty on airway distensibility. Eur Respir J. 2005 Aug;26(2):277-82.

NO IMPLIED LICENSE

The purchase or rental of the Alair™ Controller does not grant a license, either expressly, by implication, estoppel or otherwise under any Boston Scientific patent right or patent covering or relating to any method or process in which the Alair Controller might be used. An implied license only exists for the Alair Controller used in conjunction with the Alair ATS 2-5 Catheter. Nothing herein shall be construed as a right or license to (a) make, use, sell, offer to sell, import, lease or distribute the Alair Controller with a non-Alair catheter or (b) sell or offer to sell the Alair Controller to customers that plan to make, have made, use, sell, offer to sell, import, lease or distribute the Alair Controller with a non-Alair catheter.

WARRANTY







Boston Scientific Corporation (BSC) warrants for one year from the date of purchase that reasonable care has been used in the design and manufacture of this product. This warranty is in lieu of and excludes all other warranties not expressly set forth herein, whether expressed or implied by operation of law or otherwise, including, but not limited to, any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Handling, cleaning and storage of the product as well as other factors relating to the patient, diagnosis, treatment, surgical procedures, and other matters beyond Boston Scientific Corporation's control may directly affect the product and results obtained from it. Boston Scientific Corporation shall repair or replace, at its option, any part of the product that Boston Scientific Corporation determines was defective at time of shipment if notice thereof is received within one year of shipment. Boston Scientific Corporation shall not be liable for any incidental or consequential loss, damage, or expense directly or indirectly arising from the use of the product.

Boston Scientific Corporation neither assumes, nor authorizes any other person to assume for it, any other or additional liability or responsibility in connection with the product. BSC assumes no liability with respect to product use by a non-qualified physician; use contrary to documentation; use with a non-Alair catheter.























Buyer shall be responsible for the ongoing support and maintenance of the product not covered by this one-year warranty and after the one year warranty period has expired. Buyer may, at its sole cost and expense, purchase an extended warranty from Boston Scientific Corporation (BSC) to extend the term of this warranty.

Valleylab is a trademark of Covidien AG.

ConMed is a trademark of ConMed Corporation.

	Footswitch		Contents
	Serial Communication Port		Do not use if package is damaged
	Date of Manufacture		Consult Instructions For Use

SYMBOL LEGEND

	Defibrillation-Proof Type CF Applied Part		Serial Number
	Neutral Electrode Isolated from Earth at High Frequencies		For Prescription use only
	Caution		Program Memory Enable, for Use Only by Qualified Service Personnel
	Alternating Current		[Blue Safety Sign] Follow Instructions For Use
	Equipotentiality Connector		Catalog Number
	Fuses		Legal Manufacturer
	Power Off, Disconnected from the Mains		Lot Number
	Power On, Connected to the Mains		Product Number
	Catheter		Minimum Required Working Channel
	Patient Return Electrode		Recyclable Package
	Transmits and Accepts Radiofrequency Signals		Separate Collection



Manufactured for:
Boston Scientific Corporation
One Boston Scientific Place
Natick, MA 01760-1537
USA
USA Customer Service 888-272-1001



Do not use if package
is damaged.



Recyclable
Package

© 2013 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2013-02



90795407-01

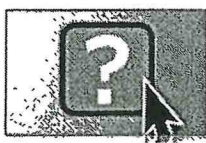


NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC Zip Code



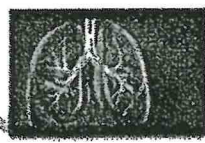
How much does asthma limit your choices?

[Take this short quiz to find out.](#)



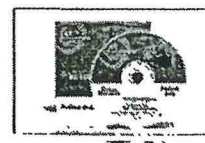
"It's amazing to see the difference. I feel like the sky's the limit."

[Hear patients with severe asthma talk about life before and after BT.](#)



See how BT works

View an animation of the BT procedure in: [English](#), [Francais](#), [Deutsch](#), [Italiano](#), or [Español](#).




Start your BT journey today!

Request a FREE ASTHMA DVD and [connect with the BT 1-2-3 Support Program.](#)

Brought to you by

Boston Scientific

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. © 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

HOME U.S. NOTICES
SITE MAP

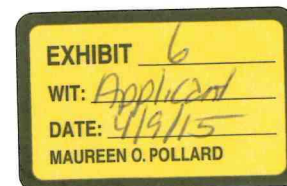
INTERNATIONAL NOTICES

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014





NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

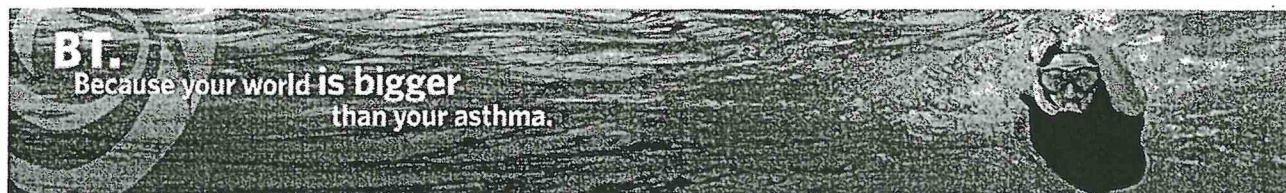
UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

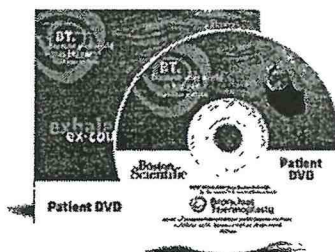
ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC Zip Code

**Support for
patients****Physician
information
request**

Home > Request more information > Support for patients

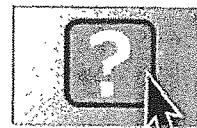
Start your BT journey with a FREE DVD and continued support

**Ready for a bigger world with fewer
asthma attacks?**Complete the fields below to request
your **FREE DVD** and connect with the
BT 1-2-3 Support Program

Thank you for your interest in Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT). Your requested information is on its way to you. In the meantime, we invite you to explore the BTforAsthma.com website to learn more about this revolutionary procedure. If you have questions about BT, talk to your doctor or call our patient support line at 1-877-810-6060.

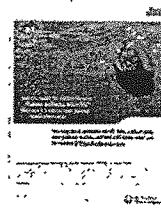
If you have any questions, please call our patient support line at 877-810-6060.

[BSC Privacy Policy](#)



How much does
asthma limit your
choices?

Take this short quiz to
find out.



Download the BT
Pamphlet for Patients.




"It's amazing to see
the difference. I feel
like the sky's the
limit."

Hear patients with severe
asthma talk about life
before and after BT.

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of
Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other
trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation
or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

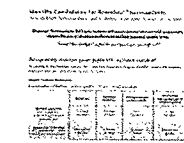
HOME U.S. NOTICES INTERNATIONAL NOTICES
SITE MAP

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014




Help your patients
recognize severe
asthma by
downloading the
[Asthma Impact Survey](#).

Support for
physicians
Request more information
[about BT, BT training
opportunities, and
referring patients for
treatment.](#)

To assist patients in finding
a BT Clinic, [click here.](#)

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of
Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other
trademarks are the property of their respective owners
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation
or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014

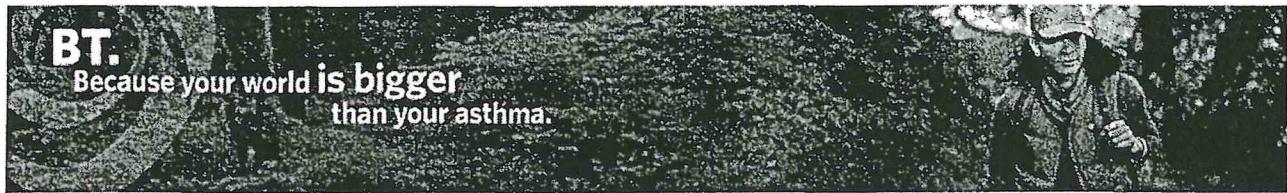


NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

[ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?](#)[FIND A BT CLINIC](#) [Zip Code](#)[Take the Asthma Impact Survey](#)[Are you a BT candidate?](#)[About asthma](#)[Current treatment options](#)

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

[START HERE](#)

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT

[Home](#) > [Are you a BT candidate?](#) > [Current treatment options](#)

Current treatment options for severe asthma

Many drugs can be prescribed to manage asthma symptoms. The severity of a patient's asthma often plays a large role in how successful a medication will be.

Some major types of currently-used asthma medications include:

<http://www.btforasthma.com/is-it-right-for-you/current-treatment-options>

Anti-inflammatory drugs. Inhaled corticosteroids are the key drugs used for controlling the underlying inflammation in asthma.

Bronchodilators widen the airways by relaxing airway smooth muscle, though they do not reverse airway inflammation. Bronchodilators come in 2 basic forms:

Maintenance medications, such as long-acting beta-agonists that work up to 12 hours.

Rescue (short-acting) medications that work quickly to ease severe asthma symptoms for 4 to 6 hours.

Medications for long-term control, including methylxanthines, anticholinergics, leukotriene inhibitors, and IgE inhibitors such as Xolair®.

Oral corticosteroids such as prednisone, when used for maintenance, are reserved for patients with severe asthma. These drugs typically serve as maintenance medications.

Medications have limitations

These medications treat asthma symptoms, but there are limitations—especially for patients with severe asthma. Studies show how hard it can be to manage asthma:

Limited efficacy in patients with severe asthma: A number of recent surveys show that symptoms are poorly controlled by asthma medications in patients with severe asthma. These patients often continue to experience frequent and serious symptoms despite taking regular doses of asthma medications.¹ Even this limited efficacy is only possible when the patient takes his or her medicine as prescribed, typically twice a day, every day.

Not taking medications as prescribed

A 2012 report by the Global Initiative for Asthma estimated that approximately 50% of patients with asthma do not take their medications as prescribed.² Non-compliance may be a reason for an increase in emergency room visits and hospitalizations among patients with severe asthma.

Side effects

Asthma medications can have potentially serious side effects. As with any medication, side effects become a greater concern when treatment is ongoing and as dosages increase, which is the case for patients with severe asthma.

Corticosteroids (oral steroids): Side effects of prednisone and other oral corticosteroids range from mild annoyances to serious, irreversible damage. These side effects occur more frequently with higher doses and longer treatment. Side effects with ongoing use include suppression of the immune system, adrenal system, and growth; osteoporosis; skin thinning; hypertension; cataracts; glaucoma; muscle weakness; and increased risk of infection. Short-term side effects include stomach upset, headache, dizziness, trouble sleeping, fluid retention, weight gain, high blood pressure, loss of potassium, elevation of cholesterol levels and vision changes.

Bronchodilators: The possible side effects of short-acting rescue medications include rapid heartbeat, skeletal muscle tremor, potassium deficiency, increased lactic acid, headache and hyperglycemia. Long-acting beta-agonists may even cause severe asthma symptoms in some patients, and death when those episodes occur.²

Other drugs: The side effects of omalizumab (Xolair®) include anaphylaxis, injection-site reactions, and viral infections.

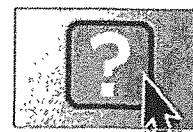
Lifestyle burdens

Because existing medications provide poor symptom control for some patients with severe asthma, they often must miss work or school. In addition, severe symptoms can require unscheduled doctor office visits, emergency room visits, and hospitalizations.

References:

1. Partridge MR. Examining the unmet need in adults with severe asthma. *Eur Respir Rev.* 2007;16:104,67-72.
2. GINA (Global Initiative for Asthma) 2012 Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention Workshop report in collaboration with National Institutes of Health (NIH) National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute NHLB/WHO 2007.

All trademarks are the property of their respective owners



How much does
asthma limit your
choices?

[Take this short quiz to
find out.](#)



[Learn more about BT with
this FREE DVD for
patients with asthma.](#)




"It's amazing to see
the difference. I feel
like the sky's the
limit."

[Hear patients with severe
asthma talk about life
before and after BT.](#)

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of
Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other
trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation
or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014

**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

[BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY](#)[REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS](#)[ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?](#)[FIND A BT CLINIC](#) [Zip Code](#)**Proven benefits****About Bronchial
Thermoplasty****Asthma and your
airways****How BT is
performed****Connect to the
BT 1-2-3
SUPPORT PROGRAM**

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

START HERE

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT

[Home](#) > [Bronchial Thermoplasty](#) > [About Bronchial Thermoplasty](#)

You deserve a fuller life—now a revolutionary
procedure can help!

If you are taking asthma medications—but still have asthma attacks—Bronchial
Thermoplasty (BT) may be right for you.

<http://www.btforasthma.com/bronchial-thermoplasty/about-bronchial-thermoplasty>

BSC000806

In a clinical study, 79% of severe asthma patients treated with BT reported significant improvements in their asthma-related quality of life, compared with patients who did not receive BT treatment.

What makes BT different from asthma medications?

Short-term (rescue) asthma medications offer temporary relief by relaxing the airway muscle so that it does not block the airways during an asthma attack.

BT is not a medication, and works in a very different way to provide long-lasting relief.

BT, delivered by the Alair® System, is a safe outpatient procedure that uses mild heat to actually reduce the amount of excess airway smooth muscle tissue in the airways.

Learn more about how BT is performed. Less muscle tissue means less airway constriction during an asthma attack. Patients can breathe more easily—and are less likely to have an asthma attack.

Fewer asthma attacks means less need for the associated oral steroid treatment—and its side effects.

BT does not replace your asthma medication. Instead, BT works with your asthma medications to give you added, long-lasting protection from serious asthma symptoms.

In a clinical trial, BT was also proven to reduce asthma attacks, emergency room visits for respiratory symptoms, and time lost from work, school, and other activities due to asthma symptoms.

Hear what other patients have experienced since their BT procedure.

Reference.

1. Castro M, et al, for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2010;181:116-124.



How much does asthma limit your choices?

Take this short quiz to find out.




Learn more about BT with this FREE DVD for patients with asthma.



Download the BT Pamphlet for Patients.

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. © 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

HOME U.S. NOTICES INTERNATIONAL NOTICES
SITE MAP

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014



NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

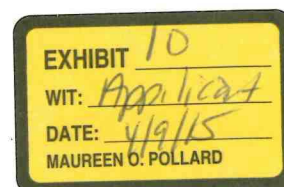
REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

[ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?](#)[FIND A BT CLINIC](#) [Zip Code](#)[Take the Asthma Impact Survey](#)[Are you a BT candidate?](#)[About asthma](#)[Current treatment options](#)

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

[START HERE](#)

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT

[Home](#) > [Are you a BT candidate?](#) > [Are you a BT candidate?](#)

Are you a BT candidate?

You may be eligible for Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) treatment if:

You are 18 years or older with severe asthma, AND

You have asthma symptoms despite taking inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists such as Advair™, Dulera™, or Symbicort™.

Take the Asthma Impact Survey to discover more about how asthma symptoms may be affecting your life.

You are not a candidate for BT if:

You have a pacemaker, internal defibrillator, or other implantable electronic device.

You have a known sensitivity to medications required to perform bronchoscopy, including lidocaine, atropine, and benzodiazepines.

You've been treated previously with BT.

Who performs the BT procedure?

BT is performed by a specially trained pulmonologist. If your regular doctor currently managing your asthma is an allergist, family practice physician, general practitioner, internist or other physician, he or she will be able to refer you to a BT Clinic for a consultation with a pulmonologist. After your BT treatment is completed, you will return to your regular asthma doctor to manage your asthma.

For help with discussing this treatment with your doctor:

Complete the Asthma Impact Survey.

Share your survey results with the physician who manages your asthma.

All trademarks are the property of their respective owners.




Learn more about BT with this FREE DVD for patients with asthma.



"It's amazing to see the difference. I feel like the sky's the limit."

Hear patients with severe asthma talk about life before and after BT.

Brought to
you by **Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

HOME U.S. NOTICES INTERNATIONAL NOTICES
SITE MAP

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014

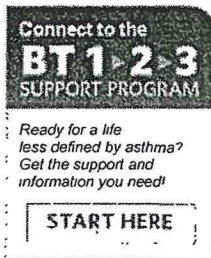


NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

[ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?](#)[FIND A BT CLINIC](#) [Zip Code](#)[Take the Asthma Impact Survey](#)[Are you a BT candidate?](#)[About asthma](#)[Current treatment options](#)[Home](#) > [Are you a BT candidate?](#) > [Take the Asthma Impact Survey](#)

How much does asthma affect your quality of life?

See for yourself: If asthma is limiting the choices you make in life, perhaps it's time to look beyond medication alone. The following survey was created by a doctor and can help you recognize the many ways severe asthma may be affecting your life.

<http://www.btforasthma.com/is-it-right-for-you/self-assessment?q=11,11,11,11,11>

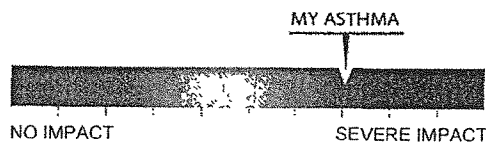
BSC000814

Be sure to share your answers with your doctor—and discover how Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) may help you live a fuller life. BT, delivered by the Alair® System, is not another medication—it's a revolutionary and safe procedure proven to provide a long-lasting reduction in asthma attacks.¹

THE ASTHMA IMPACT SURVEY™

Congratulations on taking an important step toward a new life with fewer asthma attacks

Your responses indicate that asthma has a
severe impact
on your quality of life



Print my Survey results and letter to my doctor here.

This survey is a diagnostic tool to assess the impact asthma has on your daily lifestyle. You should check with your doctor to make sure that you are taking your medication appropriately and consistently. Your medication dosage may need to be adjusted to help provide better symptom control. If you are taking the maximum tolerated medication regularly and continue to have asthma symptoms that impact your daily life, you may be a candidate for the BT treatment and you should consult an asthma specialist to learn more about your options.

Take this survey and the letter with you to your doctor. It will help your doctor determine whether you might be a candidate for BT.

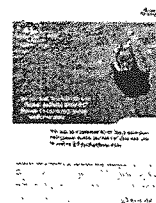
Asthma Impact Survey™ © 2002 by Quality Metric Incorporated. All Rights Reserved.
Asthma Impact Survey™ is a trademark of Quality Metric Incorporated.

References

1. Wechsler M, et al, for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2013;132:1295-1302.




**Learn more about BT with
this FREE DVD for
patients with asthma.**



[Download the BT
Pamphlet for Patients.](#)

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Allair and  are registered trademarks of
Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other
trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation
or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014



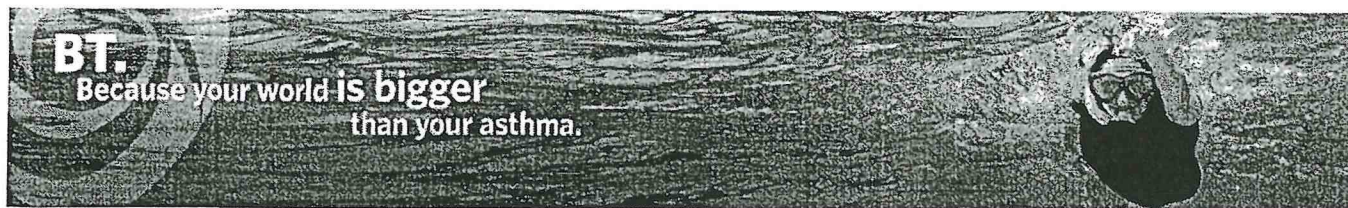
NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

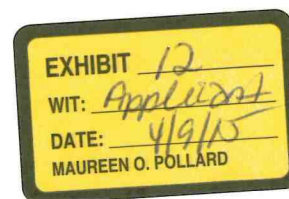
ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC *Zip Code***US availability****International
Availability****Connect to the
BT 1-2-3
SUPPORT PROGRAM**

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

START HERE

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT.



Home > Find a BT Clinic > US availability

Find a BT Clinic

Type in your zip code or click on a state on the US map to see a list of physicians offering Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) in that state.

Boston Scientific maintains an updated list of physicians who are trained to perform BT. The list is based upon location only.

<http://www.btforasthma.com/find-clinic/physician-locator>

If there isn't a BT Clinic in your area, [contact Boston Scientific](#).

Not in the United States? [View a list of hospitals outside of the US with BT Clinics](#)

(* Required)

Zip Code: *

How far are you willing to travel? *

50 miles

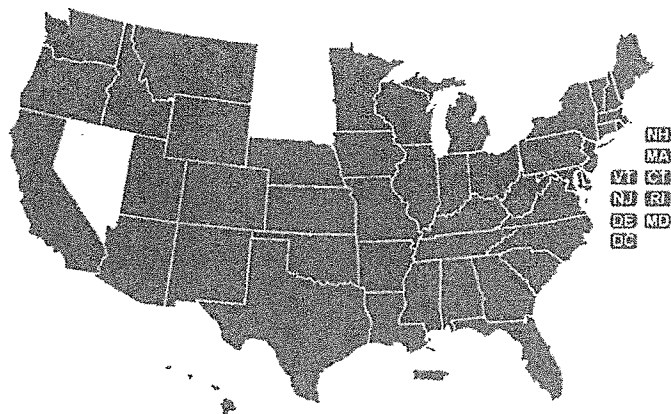


[Search](#)

OR


Find Physicians in your state:

Select



Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW:



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014



NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC Zip Code

**Patient stories****Physician stories****In the news****Press releases**

Connect to the
BT 1-2-3
SUPPORT PROGRAM

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

START HERE

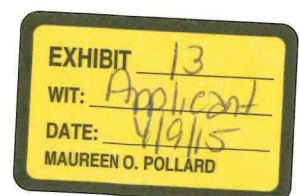
By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT.

[Home](#) > [Real people, real results](#) > [Patient stories](#)

Real people, real results

Listen and watch as people with severe asthma discuss the dramatic difference Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) has made in their lives.

Please note that individual BT treatment results may vary. BT is an add-on therapy that supplements your current asthma medications. BT, delivered by the Alair® System, is



indicated for the treatment of severe asthma in people 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists.



Angel's Story

"I've been able to cut the grass. I've been able to work on my car. I wasn't able to travel. I've been able to travel, something I haven't done for years."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Laretta's Story

"Now I can live life and go and do those fun activities that I hadn't done before. If you really want to live life and you really don't want a disease that's controlling your life or defining you, have BT."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Mike's and Jenny's Story

"I just feel like I'm free... I feel like the sky's the limit."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Chris's Story

"It was a moment of revelation. It's that sun breaking through the clouds and you go, 'It worked.'"

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Debbie's Story

"I noticed doing things around the house, things that I would get out of breath with before. Like carrying up laundry from the basement, just something as simple as that... I wasn't as winded."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



John's Story

"I've gone from torture to being able to live my life, I feel like I've got a second chance."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Brenda's Story

"I would highly recommend this to somebody else. It's just a simple procedure and it's a great benefit."

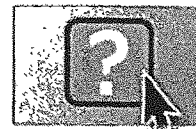
[VIEW VIDEO](#)

Jeff's Story



"My life has changed due to the treatment in a way that I'm not afraid to go hiking in the mountains."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



How much does asthma limit your choices?


[Take this short quiz to find out.](#)



[Learn more about BT with this FREE DVD for patients with asthma.](#)

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014

**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

NEW 5 YEAR DATA

For Health Care Professionals



UNITED STATES

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC

Zip Code

**Patient stories****Physician stories****In the news****Press releases**

Connect to the
BT 1-2-3
SUPPORT PROGRAM

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

START HERE

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT



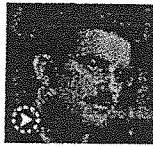
[Home](#) > [Real people, real results](#) > [Physician stories](#)

Physician stories

Listen and watch as physicians discuss the positive results they've seen in their patients with this revolutionary treatment for severe asthma.

Please note that individual BT treatment results may vary. BT is an add-on therapy to current asthma medications. BT, delivered by the Alair[®] System, is indicated for the

treatment of severe asthma in people 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists.

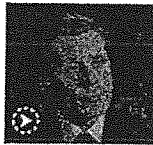


[VIEW VIDEO](#)

Dr. Mario Castro

Washington University, St. Louis, MO

"The benefits that we have seen with Bronchial Thermoplasty include an improvement in their quality of life, an improvement in their asthma symptoms, a decrease in the frequency that they end up in the emergency room and in turn towards decreased hospitalizations as well, and we also see that they are missing less work or school after the treatment itself."



[VIEW VIDEO](#)

Dr. Gerard P. Cox

McMaster University, St. Joseph's Healthcare, Hamilton, Ontario, Canada

"Bronchial Thermoplasty represents an opportunity, different from anything that's been done before therapeutically for these patients to help control asthma."



[VIEW VIDEO](#)

Dr. David R. Duhamel

Virginia Hospital Center, Arlington, VA

"I'm very excited about this new technology. I really think it offers a new opportunity to greatly impact our patient's lives."



[VIEW VIDEO](#)

Dr. Jeff B. Hales

Virginia Hospital Center, Arlington, VA

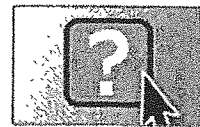
"The patients that I followed as an assessment physician through this AIR2 trial are walking on cloud nine."



[VIEW VIDEO](#)

Dr. Armin Ernst and Patricia DiGiusto

"Patricia was the perfect first patient for any new procedure that you want to introduce into a hospital. She was looking for other options and really came to us to get a better idea of what Bronchial Thermoplasty was all about."




How much does asthma limit your choices?

[Take this short quiz to find out.](#)



Learn more about BT with
[this FREE DVD for
patients with asthma.](#)

Brought to
you by **Boston
Scientific**

Alan and  are registered trademarks of
Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other
trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation
or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014



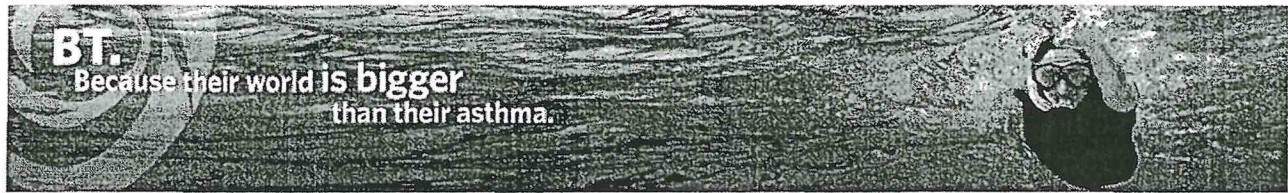
BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC Zip Code

UNITED STATES

**Overview for Physicians****Performing BT****The Alair™ System****Clinical Studies****AIR2 Trial****RISA Trial****Bibliography**[Home](#) > [Healthcare Professionals](#) > [Overview for Physicians](#)

Do your asthma patients know what they are missing?

Now, a revolutionary procedure can help them lead a fuller life.

Frequent asthma exacerbations can have a profound impact on a patient's lifestyle. Severe asthma places limitations on work, school, and other activities. However, patients may not acknowledge—or even recognize—that their asthma symptoms are severe. Over time, these patients may try to avoid exacerbations by modifying daily activities—even those that they enjoy.

Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT), delivered by the Alair™ System, is a safe, minimally invasive outpatient procedure for the treatment of severe asthma in adults. If you have patients who you believe may benefit from this procedure, the information in this section will help you identify the appropriate BT candidates.

Who is appropriate for BT?

Adult patients with severe asthma (at least 18 years old)

Patients whose asthma is not well controlled despite taking a combination of inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists such as Advair™, Symbicort™, or Dulera™

Patients able to safely undergo bronchoscopy per hospital guidelines

Help your patients recognize severe asthma: The online [Asthma Impact Survey](#) is intended to help you determine how asthma may be influencing the choices your patient makes every day.

A recent study has shown that the interference of asthma with daily activities is a key predictor for the risk of future exacerbations.¹ In fact, in an analysis of the quality-of-life survey you see here, patients with severe health impairment related to asthma were 70% to 4 times as likely to manifest adverse outcomes like ER visits and oral corticosteroid use.²

Who is *not* appropriate for BT?

Patients who have a pacemaker, internal defibrillator, or other implantable electronic device

Patients who have a known sensitivity to medications required to perform bronchoscopy, including lidocaine, atropine, and benzodiazepines

Patients who have previously been treated with BT

BT should be delayed when any of the following conditions are present:

Active respiratory infection

Asthma exacerbation or changing dose of systemic corticosteroids (up or down) in the past 14 days

Known coagulopathy



Patient is unable to stop taking anticoagulants, antiplatelet agents, aspirin, or non-steroidal anti-inflammatory medications (NSAIDs) before the procedure with physician guidance

Who performs the BT procedure?

Pulmonologists who are experienced in bronchoscopy

BT training is required, and includes:

Review of Alair System Catheter Directions for Use and Controller Operator's Manual

Guided didactic instruction in computer simulation-based Bronchial Thermoplasty Learning Center

Detailed in-service training of the Alair System

Hands-on training with Alair System in a lung model prior to initial cases

Proctoring of initial cases by Boston Scientific Health Care Industry Representative (HCIR)

Ongoing support of cases when requested

Where is the procedure performed?

At facilities that are appropriately equipped to perform bronchoscopy and are equipped to handle respiratory emergencies

How is the procedure performed?

[Click here to view the video](#)

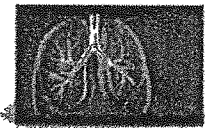
Review a complete list of [indications for use, contraindications and precautions](#).

If you would like to refer a patient for BT or are interested in performing the procedure yourself, please complete the [Physician information request form](#).

References.

1. Schatz M, et al *Chest* 2012;41:66-72
2. Schatz M, et al *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;128;1:44-49.e1.

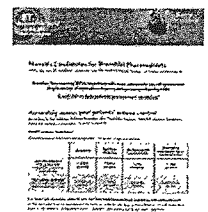
All trademarks are the property of their respective owners.



See how BT works

View an animation of the BT procedure in: [English](#), [Français](#), [Deutsch](#), [Italiano](#), or [Español](#)

[Find out why physicians are excited about bringing BT to patients with severe asthma.](#)



Help your patients recognize severe asthma by


downloading the
[Asthma Impact Survey](#).

Support for
physicians
[Request more information
about BT, BT training
opportunities, and
referring patients for
treatment.](#)

To assist patients in finding
a BT Clinic, [click here](#).

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of
Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other
trademarks are the property of their respective owners
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation
or its affiliates. All rights reserved

FOLLOW



SHARE

[HOME](#) [US NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014

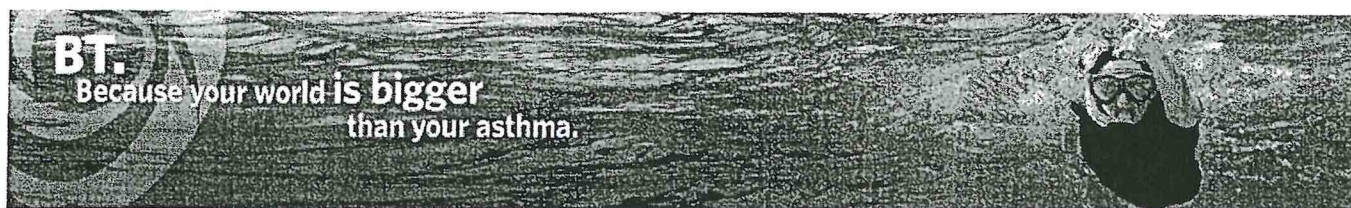


NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC Zip Code

**Support for patients****Physician information request****Connect to the
BT 1-2-3
SUPPORT PROGRAM**

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

START HERE

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT.

[Home](#) > [Request more information](#) > [Physician information request](#)

Physician information request

If you would like more information on Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT), please complete the information requested below and a representative from Boston Scientific will follow up with you.

<http://www.btforasthma.com/get-more-info/physician-info-request>

BSC000828

Please select one of the following:

- ☐ I am interested in referring patients for Bronchial Thermoplasty treatment.
☐ I currently provide or am interested in providing Bronchial Thermoplasty treatments to patients.

(* Required)

Title	<input type="text" value="Please Select..."/>
Specialty	<input type="text" value="Please Select..."/>
First Name *	<input type="text"/>
Last Name *	<input type="text"/>
Hospital/Clinic *	<input type="text"/>
Address 1 *	<input type="text"/>
Address 2	<input type="text"/>
City *	<input type="text"/>
State *	<input type="text" value="Please Select..."/>
Zip/Postal code*	<input type="text"/>
Country	<input type="text"/>
Phone	<input type="text"/>
Email *	<input type="text"/>

I currently perform bronchoscopy ☐ Yes ☐ No

I perform approximately the following number of bronchoscopies per month

I see in my office the following number of severe asthma patients per month

How did you hear about us? *

☐ I am interested in learning more about the BT training program

☐ I am interested in referring a patient(s) for BT


☐ I would like to receive more information on BT

Comments:

Boston Scientific Corporation
150 Baytech Drive
San Jose, CA 95134
T: 877-810-6060 F: 408-419-0199

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW:



SHARE

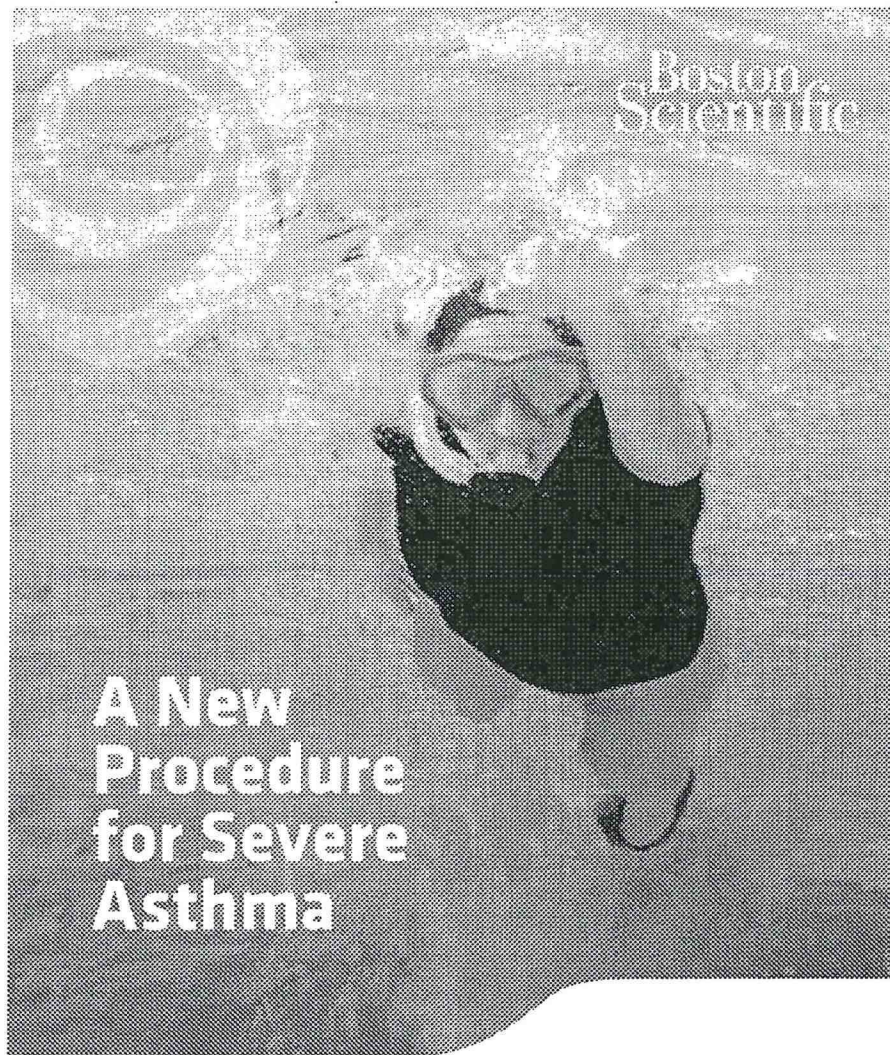
HOME U.S. NOTICES INTERNATIONAL NOTICES
SITE MAP

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014



This brochure describes
a new procedure for
treating severe asthma
in adults.

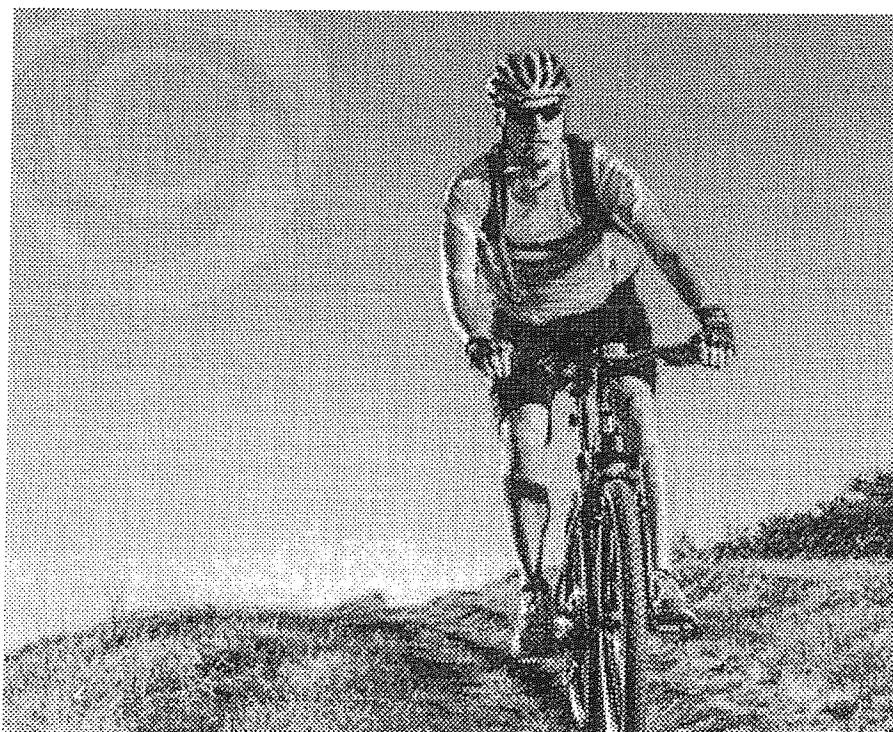
EXHIBIT	17
WIT:	Applied
DATE:	4/9/15
MAUREEN O. POLLARD	

*NOW AVAILABLE from Boston Scientific
for the treatment of severe asthma in adults*

 **Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

Contents

About severe asthma	3
Why do doctors do this treatment?	3
What is the Alair™ System?	3
What is Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT)?	4
Who can have this treatment? (Indication for Use)	4
Who cannot have this treatment? (Contraindications)	4-5
What are the risks and side effects of BT?	6-7
What are the benefits of BT?	8
What will happen if you decide to have the BT treatment for your severe asthma?	9-10
What happens after each BT treatment?	11
When to call the doctor	11



About severe asthma

What happens when you have severe asthma?

Air travels in and out of your lungs through airways, which are tubes. There are tiny muscles in the walls of the airways. People who have severe asthma have larger muscles in their airways than other people. The airways close down when these muscles contract.

What happens when your airways close down?

When airways close down it can be harder to breathe. Your chest may feel tight. You may wheeze or cough. Asthma medicines usually open up the airways. These medicines do not always work well in patients who have severe asthma.

Why do doctors do this treatment?

You have severe asthma. Your asthma is severe because the asthma drugs you take now do not control your asthma symptoms.

Your doctor wants to use the Alair™ System to treat your severe asthma. This treatment is called Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT). BT is a procedure and not an asthma medicine. Your doctor thinks your health is good enough to have this treatment.

If you decide to have this treatment, you will need to do what your doctor asks you to do or you may be harmed.

What is the Alair System?

The Alair System is the tool that your doctor will use to perform BT. The Alair System has two main parts:

- * A small tube with 4 wires at the end. See **Figure 1**.
- * A machine that heats the wires

You need to decide if BT is right for you. You will be treated by a doctor who has been trained and knows how to use it correctly.

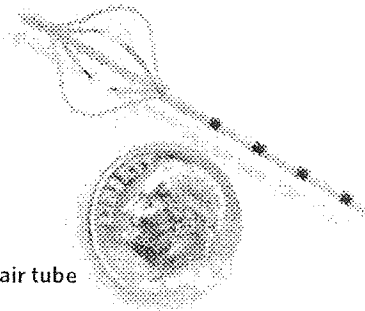


Figure 1: Actual size of tip of Alair tube



What is Bronchial Thermoplasty?

The Alair™ System mildly heats your airway walls. This heating reduces some of the extra muscle present in the airways. This may allow your airways to stay more open and help you breathe better.

Who can have this treatment?

(Indication for Use)

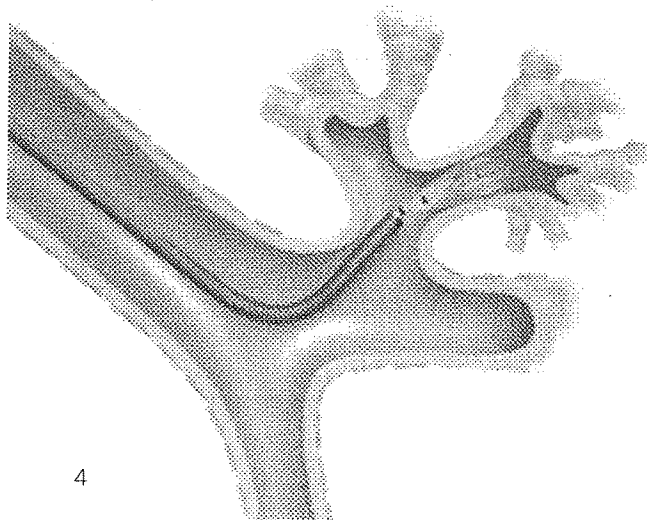
The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists.

Who cannot have this treatment?

(Contraindications)

You cannot have this treatment if you have:

- ❖ **An implant with electronics.** Tell your doctor if you have any implants with electronics, such as a pacemaker. BT may keep the implant from working correctly.
- ❖ **Problems taking certain medicines.** Tell your doctor if you have ever had a problem taking any kind of medicine. Your doctor will use some medicines to perform BT. Your doctor needs to make sure the medicine he or she uses will not hurt you.
- ❖ **Have had this treatment before.** Tell your doctor if you have had BT before.
- ❖ **You cannot have this treatment if you are less than 18 years old.** No one has tested BT in patients younger than 18 years.



You cannot have this treatment while the following conditions are present:

- ✱ **An active respiratory infection.** Tell your doctor if you think you have an infection, fever, or your asthma is worse than usual. If your infection is in your lungs or airway, BT may harm you.
- ✱ **Have had an asthma attack or changed your oral corticosteroid dose in the last 2 weeks.** Tell your doctor if either of these has happened in the last 2 weeks. If you have had an asthma attack or changed your oral corticosteroid dose in the last 2 weeks, BT may harm you.
- ✱ **A blood-clotting problem.** Tell your doctor if you take any drugs to keep your blood from clotting. Some call these drugs blood thinners. If you have a blood-clotting problem, BT may harm you.

Clinical study

In 2007, doctors studied nearly 300 patients who had severe asthma. In this study, they saw how well BT worked and what side effects patients had. Doctors treated about 200 people with BT. This was the “BT Group.” Doctors treated another group in a similar way, but they did not heat their airways. This was the “Sham Group.” Patients did not know which group they were in. Doctors studied these patients for a year after their last treatment. We do not know how well patients did beyond one year. This is still being studied.



What are the risks and side effects of BT?

Right after their doctors treated them, many patients in the study had side effects. **Table 1** shows how many people had each side effect. The table shows side effects that occurred in 3 or more in every 100 patients in the BT group.

How to read this table:

- ✦ Short-term: from start of first treatment until 6 weeks after third treatment.
- ✦ Long-term: from 6 weeks after last treatment until 1 year after last treatment.
- ✦ In the table, some patients had more than one side effect.
- ✦ Look at **Table 1**.
 - Think of a group of 100 patients.
 - Look at the column that says "Short-term period."
 - Go down that column to the row that reads "More than one symptom of asthma."
 - This row means that 52 out of every 100 patients in the BT Group had "more than one symptom of asthma" sometime after their first treatment until 6 weeks after their third treatment.
 - On the same row, now look at the "Long-term period" column.
 - You see there were 27 out of every 100 patients in the BT Group who had "more than one symptom of asthma" in the long-term period.
 - The 52 and the 27 are not separate groups of patients. Some patients may be counted in both groups:
 - ✦ One or more patients who had a "short-term period" effect may have also had a "long-term period" effect. Meaning he or she did not get better.
 - ✦ One or more patients who did not have a "short-term period" effect may have had a "long-term period" effect. Meaning he or she got worse later.
 - ✦ One or more patients who had a "short-term period" effect may not have had a "long-term period" effect. Meaning their problem went away.

Other side effects related to the lungs, ear, nose, and throat occurred in the short-term or long-term periods in the BT group. The following side effects occurred in 1 or more in every 100 patients in the BT group, but less often than the side effects in **Table 1**: abnormal breath sounds, acute swelling of the airways, blocked airways, bleeding during the procedure, bloody mucus, bloody nose, chest

Table 1: Short-term and Long-term side effects

Type of Side Effect	Short-term period		Long-term period	
	BT Group	Sham Group	BT Group	Sham Group
Related to Breathing	OUT OF EVERY 100 PATIENTS			
More than one symptom of asthma	52	39	27	43
Wheezing	15	6	4	3
Chest pain	14	13	3	1
Cough	12	14	3	5
Shortness of breath	11	6	2	1
Chest discomfort	9	10	2	1
Infection in the lower airways	8	2	3	6
Productive cough	7	9	3	4
Collapse of part of the lung	5	0	0	0
Swelling of the airways	4	2	7	5
Bleeding	3	0	0	0
Related to Ear, Nose, and Throat				
Infection in the upper airways	20	11	30	26
Swelling of the nose and/or throat	5	7	11	5
Throat irritation	5	12	1	3
Infection in the upper airways caused by a virus	4	2	6	7
Sinusitis	3	5	6	7
Acute sinusitis	3	2	4	8
Sore throat	3	5	1	2
Allergic rhinitis	2	3	4	4
Rhinitis	2	0	4	6
All Other				
Headaches	14	9	5	3
Back pain	5	6	3	5
Fever	4	2	0	1
Influenza	4	2	4	12
Upset stomach	4	2	2	4
Anxiety	4	0	1	2
Nausea	3	4	1	1
High blood pressure	3	2	3	3
Urinary tract infection	1	1	3	1

* One instance of bleeding occurred 31 days after a BT treatment and was treated with a medical procedure.

congestion, increased mucus in upper airways, infection in the lower airways caused by a virus, low oxygen in the blood, narrowing of airways, nasal congestion, pneumonia, runny nose, and swelling of the throat caused by a virus.

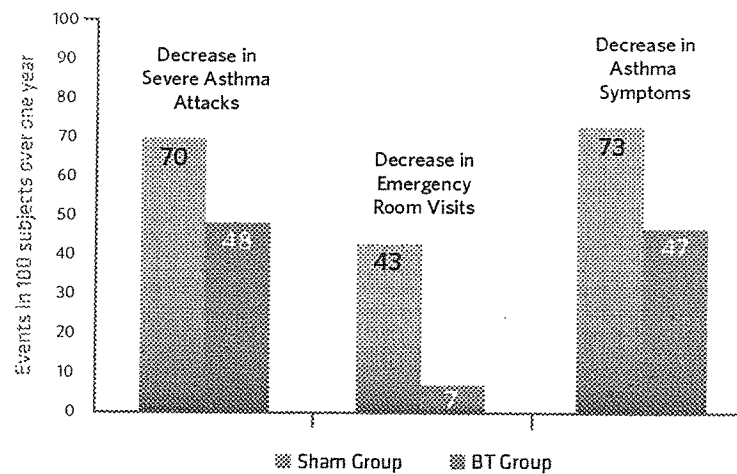
Ask your doctor about other uncommon side effects that are not related to the lungs, ear, nose, and throat.



What are the benefits of BT?

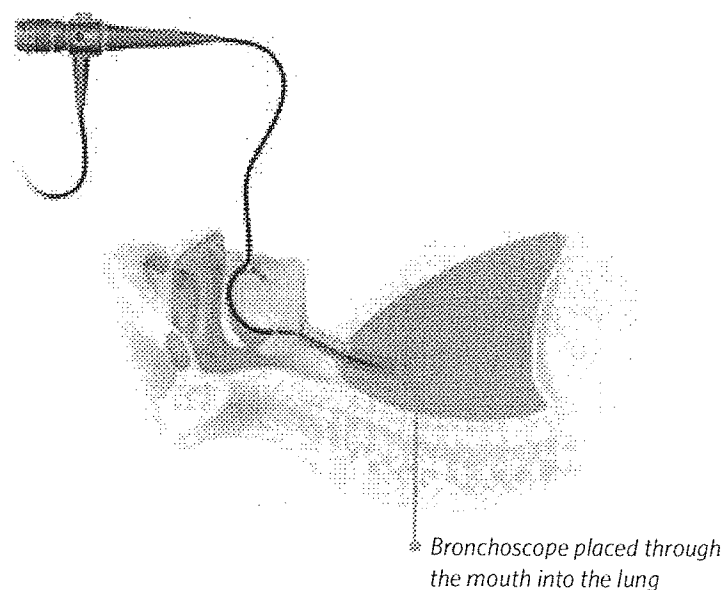
The study showed that the people in the BT Group had fewer severe asthma attacks, visits to the emergency room, and asthma symptoms, as shown in **Figure 2**.

Figure 2. Benefits of BT



The BT Group also lost on average 3 fewer days per patient from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. This was for one year after treatment compared to the Sham Group. This is not shown in **Figure 2**.

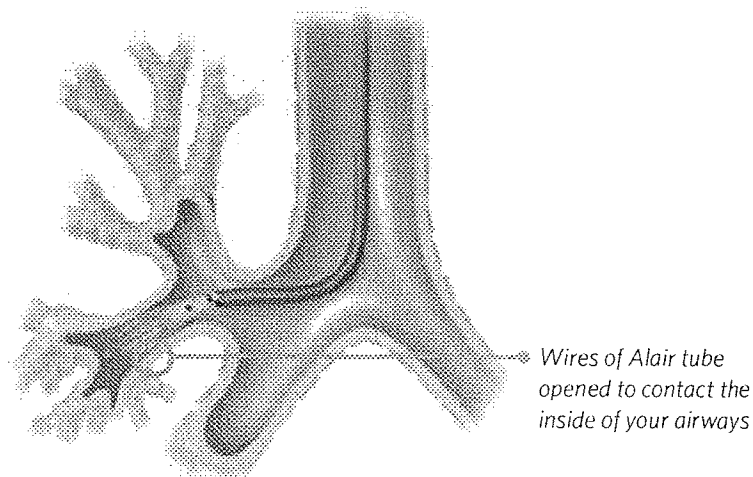
Figure 3. Placement of bronchoscope into your lungs

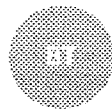


What will happen if you decide to have the BT treatment for your severe asthma?

- ✦ There will be 3 treatments. There will be 3 weeks in between each treatment.
- ✦ You will prepare for each treatment by taking a 50 mg steroid pill by mouth once a day for 3 days before the treatment.
- ✦ You will also take a 50 mg steroid pill on the day of the treatment.
- ✦ On each BT treatment day, your doctor will test your lungs. He or she will do this by checking how much air you can blow out.
- ✦ Your doctor will make sure you don't have an infection. An infection would delay the treatment.
- ✦ Your doctor will tell you what he or she will do during BT.
- ✦ Your doctor will:
 1. Give you medicine to make you sleepy.
 2. Put a small tube called a bronchoscope through your mouth into your airways. See **Figure 3**.
 3. Put the smaller Alair™ tube through the bronchoscope. The wires on its end will touch your airways. See **Figure 4**.

Figure 4. Placement of Alair tube in your lungs

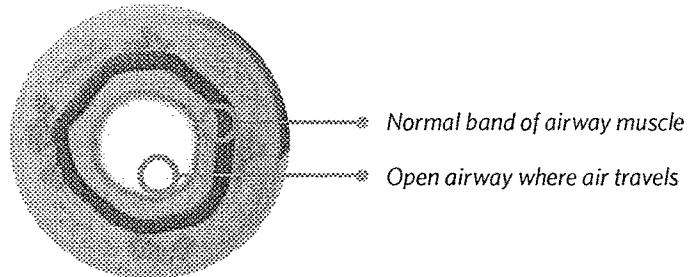




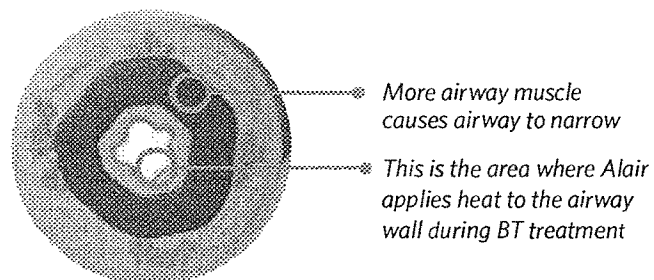
4. Heat the wires on the end of the small Alair™ tube to reduce some of the airway muscle tissue. You won't feel this because your doctor gave you medicine. See **Figure 5** for how airways look before and after Bronchial Thermoplasty treatment.

Figure 5. Airways before and after BT treatment

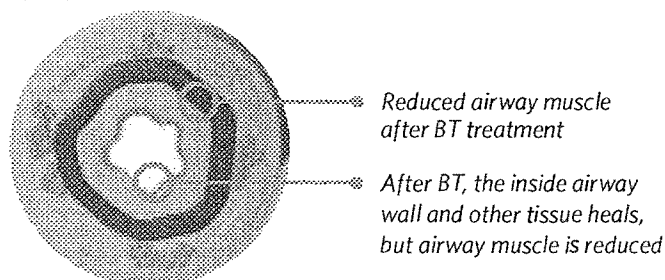
Airway of person without asthma



Airway of person with severe asthma



Airway of person with severe asthma after treatment



5. Move the small Alair tube to more places and treat them the same way.
6. Take the small Alair tube and the bronchoscope out.
7. Watch over you as you wake up and recover.

What happens after each BT treatment?

- * You need to take a 50 mg steroid pill the day after.
- * Your doctor will contact you by phone to check on you:
 - The day after your treatment
 - The day after that, and
 - A week after your treatment
- * You will still need to take your asthma medicine.

After your airways heal from your first treatment, you will go back to your doctor for your second treatment. Your doctor will treat more of your airways. After you get well from that, your doctor will treat the rest of your airways in your third treatment.

Use your rescue inhaler if your asthma symptoms get bad. Tell your doctor if you needed to use your rescue inhaler.

When to call the doctor?

If you have this treatment, contact your doctor if your asthma symptoms get worse and do not get better after using your rescue inhaler.

Brief Statement of Relevant Indications for Use, Contraindications, Warnings, and Adverse Events:

The Alair™ Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists. The Alair System is not for use in patients with an active implantable electronic device or known sensitivity to medications used in bronchoscopy. Previously treated airways of the lung should not be retreated with the Alair System. Patients should be stable and suitable to undergo bronchoscopy. The most common side effect of BT is an expected transient increase in the frequency and worsening of respiratory-related symptoms.

Thank you for considering
this important new treatment
for severe asthma.

www.BTforAsthma.com


Where to learn more about
the Alair™ System and BT

- Contact your doctor, or
- Call Boston Scientific toll free:
877-810-6060

**Boston
Scientific**

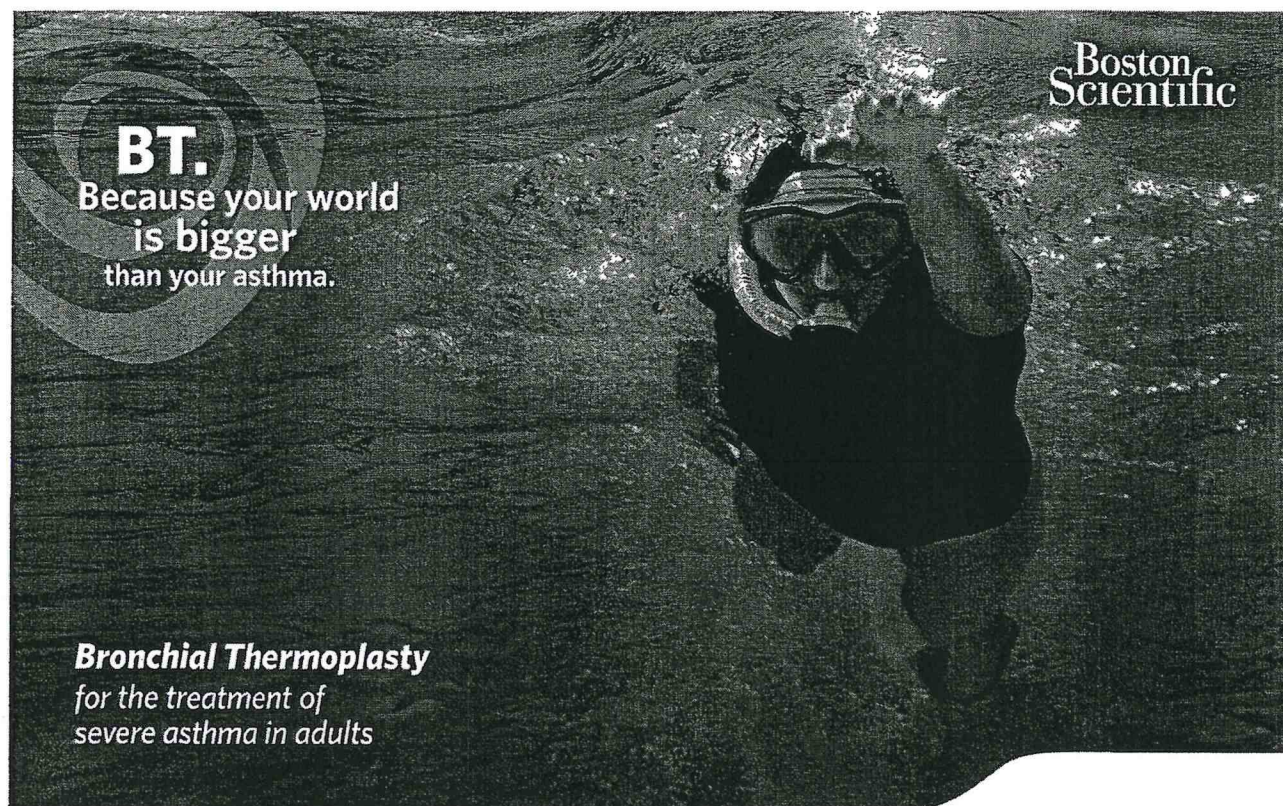
Boston Scientific Corporation
One Boston Scientific Place
Natick, MA 01760-1537

www.BTforAsthma.com

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates.

© 2013 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved. 12217 Rev. A 2013-03

BSC000569



Are you ready for a fuller life with
fewer asthma attacks?

Perhaps it's time to look
beyond medication alone.



It's not a medication— it's revolutionary relief for severe asthma

Are you

- taking multiple asthma medications but still having asthma attacks?
- adjusting your lifestyle to avoid asthma triggers?
- missing work, school, or daily activities because of asthma?

If the answer is yes, you might be a candidate for **Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) delivered by the Alair™ System**. It's a safe outpatient procedure that provides a long-lasting reduction in asthma attacks for people with severe asthma.¹ **Fewer asthma attacks means less need for the associated oral steroid treatment and its side effects.**

BT is clinically proven to work. In a clinical study, patients with severe asthma who were treated with BT experienced:

32% decrease in severe asthma attacks²

84% reduction in asthma-related emergency room visits²

66% fewer days lost from work, school, and daily activities due to asthma²

Additionally:

79% of patients who were treated with BT reported a **significant improvement** in their asthma-related **quality of life**²

Reductions in asthma attacks, emergency room visits, and hospitalizations were shown to extend through a 2-year follow-up period.¹

BT, delivered by the Alair System, is a safe outpatient procedure

- As with any procedure, there are risks, and individual results may vary.
- The most common side effect of BT is a temporary worsening of respiratory-related symptoms. These events typically occur within one day of the BT procedure and usually resolve within a week with proper care.
- There is a small risk (3.4% per procedure) that symptoms may require hospitalization.

BT is indicated for the treatment of severe asthma in people 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists.

How BT is performed

- During the procedure a tiny, carefully controlled device delivers mild heat to the smooth muscle of the airways in your lungs.
- No incision is needed, because the procedure is performed with a bronchoscope inserted through the nose or mouth.
- When your BT treatment is complete, you will return to your regular asthma-treating doctor to continue managing your asthma.

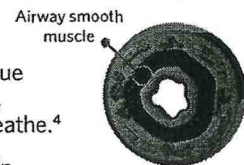
BT reduces asthma attacks by reducing airway smooth-muscle tissue

- People who have asthma have more airway smooth-muscle tissue surrounding their airways than people who don't have asthma.³⁻⁵
- During an asthma attack, this excess tissue constricts the airways, making it harder to breathe.⁴
- Asthma medicines help open up the airways, but these medicines don't always work well in people who have severe asthma.⁴
- BT is an add-on therapy that supplements your current asthma medications.

Airway cross sections



Normal patient



Patient with asthma



Patient with asthma attack

Treatment with BT actually reduces the amount of excess smooth-muscle tissue in the airways. With less of this tissue, the airways constrict less, reducing asthma attacks and making breathing easier.²

NOW AVAILABLE from Boston Scientific
for the treatment of severe asthma in adults



Is asthma limiting your life?

You may be a candidate for Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT).


Take a short quiz, hear patient stories, and find a
BT Clinic near you by visiting BTforAsthma.com.

Brief Statement of Relevant Indications for Use, Contraindications, Warnings, and Adverse Events: The Alair™ Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists. The Alair System is not for use in patients with an active implantable electronic device or known sensitivity to medications used in bronchoscopy. Previously treated airways of the lung should not be treated with the Alair System. Patients should be stable and suitable to undergo bronchoscopy. The most common side effect of BT is an expected transient increase in the frequency and worsening of respiratory-related symptoms. Rx only.

CAUTION: Law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Indications, contraindications, precautions, and warnings can be found with product labeling.

References: 1. Castro M, et al. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol.* 2011;107:65-70. 2. Castro M, et al, for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2010;181:116-124. 3. Woodruff PG, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2004;169:1001-1006. 4. Cox PG, et al. *Eur Respir J.* 2004;24:659-663. 5. Wechsler ME. *Allergy Asthma Proc.* 2008;29:1-6.

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates.
© 2013 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved. ENDO-144502-AA March 2013

Boston
Scientific

A New Procedure for Severe Asthma

This brochure describes
a new procedure for
treating severe asthma
in adults.

EXHIBIT

4

WIT:

Opposer

DATE:

4/9/15

MAUREEN O. POLLARD

NOW AVAILABLE from Boston Scientific
for the treatment of severe asthma in adults



**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

BSC000558

What is Bronchial Thermoplasty?

The Alair™ System mildly heats your airway walls. This heating reduces some of the extra muscle present in the airways. This may allow your airways to stay more open and help you breathe better.

Who can have this treatment?

(Indication for Use)

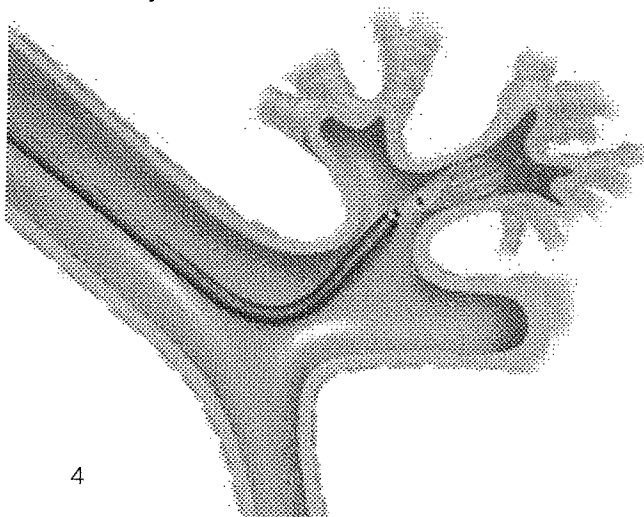
The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists.

Who cannot have this treatment?

(Contraindications)

You cannot have this treatment if you have:

- ✦ **An implant with electronics.** Tell your doctor if you have any implants with electronics, such as a pacemaker. BT may keep the implant from working correctly.
- ✦ **Problems taking certain medicines.** Tell your doctor if you have ever had a problem taking any kind of medicine. Your doctor will use some medicines to perform BT. Your doctor needs to make sure the medicine he or she uses will not hurt you.
- ✦ **Have had this treatment before.** Tell your doctor if you have had BT before.
- ✦ **You cannot have this treatment if you are less than 18 years old.** No one has tested BT in patients younger than 18 years.



You cannot have this treatment while the following conditions are present:

- ✱ **An active respiratory infection.** Tell your doctor if you think you have an infection, fever, or your asthma is worse than usual. If your infection is in your lungs or airway, BT may harm you.
- ✱ **Have had an asthma attack or changed your oral corticosteroid dose in the last 2 weeks.** Tell your doctor if either of these has happened in the last 2 weeks. If you have had an asthma attack or changed your oral corticosteroid dose in the last 2 weeks, BT may harm you.
- ✱ **A blood-clotting problem.** Tell your doctor if you take any drugs to keep your blood from clotting. Some call these drugs blood thinners. If you have a blood-clotting problem, BT may harm you.

Clinical study

In 2007, doctors studied nearly 300 patients who had severe asthma. In this study, they saw how well BT worked and what side effects patients had. Doctors treated about 200 people with BT. This was the "BT Group." Doctors treated another group in a similar way, but they did not heat their airways. This was the "Sham Group." Patients did not know which group they were in. Doctors studied these patients for a year after their last treatment. We do not know how well patients did beyond one year. This is still being studied.



What are the risks and side effects of BT?

Right after their doctors treated them, many patients in the study had side effects. **Table 1** shows how many people had each side effect. The table shows side effects that occurred in 3 or more in every 100 patients in the BT group.

How to read this table:

- ✦ Short-term: from start of first treatment until 6 weeks after third treatment.
- ✦ Long-term: from 6 weeks after last treatment until 1 year after last treatment.
- ✦ In the table, some patients had more than one side effect.
- ✦ Look at **Table 1**.
 - Think of a group of 100 patients.
 - Look at the column that says "Short-term period."
 - Go down that column to the row that reads "More than one symptom of asthma."
 - This row means that 52 out of every 100 patients in the BT Group had "more than one symptom of asthma" sometime after their first treatment until 6 weeks after their third treatment.
 - On the same row, now look at the "Long-term period" column.
 - You see there were 27 out of every 100 patients in the BT Group who had "more than one symptom of asthma" in the long-term period.
 - The 52 and the 27 are not separate groups of patients. Some patients may be counted in both groups:
 - ✦ One or more patients who had a "short-term period" effect may have also had a "long-term period" effect. Meaning he or she did not get better.
 - ✦ One or more patients who did not have a "short-term period" effect may have had a "long-term period" effect. Meaning he or she got worse later.
 - ✦ One or more patients who had a "short-term period" effect may not have had a "long-term period" effect. Meaning their problem went away.

Other side effects related to the lungs, ear, nose, and throat occurred in the short-term or long-term periods in the BT group. The following side effects occurred in 1 or more in every 100 patients in the BT group, but less often than the side effects in **Table 1**: abnormal breath sounds, acute swelling of the airways, blocked airways, bleeding during the procedure, bloody mucus, bloody nose, chest

Table 1: Short-term and Long-term side effects

Type of Side Effect	Short-term period		Long-term period	
	BT Group	Sham Group	BT Group	Sham Group
Related to Breathing	OUT OF EVERY 100 PATIENTS			
More than one symptom of asthma	52	39	27	43
Wheezing	15	6	4	3
Chest pain	14	13	3	1
Cough	12	14	3	5
Shortness of breath	11	6	2	1
Chest discomfort	9	10	2	1
Infection in the lower airways	8	2	3	6
Productive cough	7	9	3	4
Collapse of part of the lung	5	0	0	0
Swelling of the airways	4	2	7	5
Bleeding	3	0	0	0
Related to Ear, Nose, and Throat				
Infection in the upper airways	20	11	30	26
Swelling of the nose and/or throat	5	7	11	5
Throat irritation	5	12	1	3
Infection in the upper airways caused by a virus	4	2	6	7
Sinusitis	3	5	6	7
Acute sinusitis	3	2	4	8
Sore throat	3	5	1	2
Allergic rhinitis	2	3	4	4
Rhinitis	2	0	4	6
All Other				
Headaches	14	9	5	3
Back pain	5	6	3	5
Fever	4	2	0	1
Influenza	4	2	4	12
Upset stomach	4	2	2	4
Anxiety	4	0	1	2
Nausea	3	4	1	1
High blood pressure	3	2	3	3
Urinary tract infection	1	1	3	1

*One instance of bleeding occurred 31 days after a BT treatment and was treated with a medical procedure.

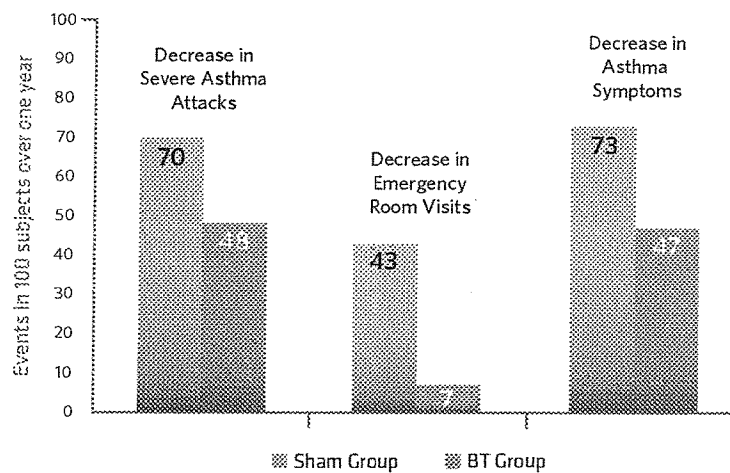
congestion, increased mucus in upper airways, infection in the lower airways caused by a virus, low oxygen in the blood, narrowing of airways, nasal congestion, pneumonia, runny nose, and swelling of the throat caused by a virus.

Ask your doctor about other uncommon side effects that are not related to the lungs, ear, nose, and throat.

What are the benefits of BT?

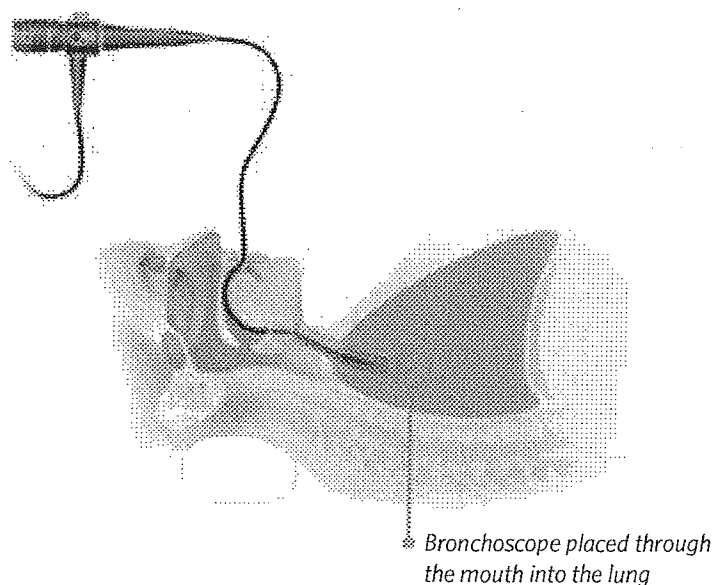
The study showed that the people in the BT Group had fewer severe asthma attacks, visits to the emergency room, and asthma symptoms, as shown in **Figure 2**.

Figure 2. Benefits of BT



The BT Group also lost on average 3 fewer days per patient from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. This was for one year after treatment compared to the Sham Group. This is not shown in **Figure 2**.

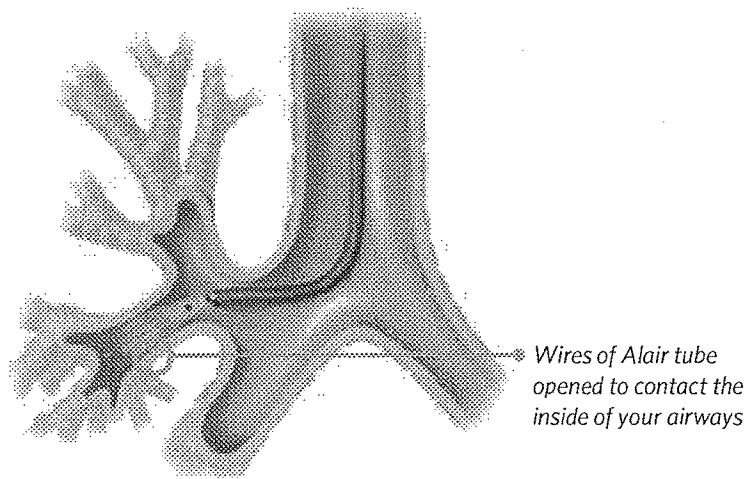
Figure 3. Placement of bronchoscope into your lungs



What will happen if you decide to have the BT treatment for your severe asthma?

- ✦ There will be 3 treatments. There will be 3 weeks in between each treatment.
- ✦ You will prepare for each treatment by taking a 50 mg steroid pill by mouth once a day for 3 days before the treatment.
- ✦ You will also take a 50 mg steroid pill on the day of the treatment.
- ✦ On each BT treatment day, your doctor will test your lungs. He or she will do this by checking how much air you can blow out.
- ✦ Your doctor will make sure you don't have an infection. An infection would delay the treatment.
- ✦ Your doctor will tell you what he or she will do during BT.
- ✦ Your doctor will:
 1. Give you medicine to make you sleepy.
 2. Put a small tube called a bronchoscope through your mouth into your airways. See **Figure 3**.
 3. Put the smaller Alair™ tube through the bronchoscope. The wires on its end will touch your airways. See **Figure 4**.

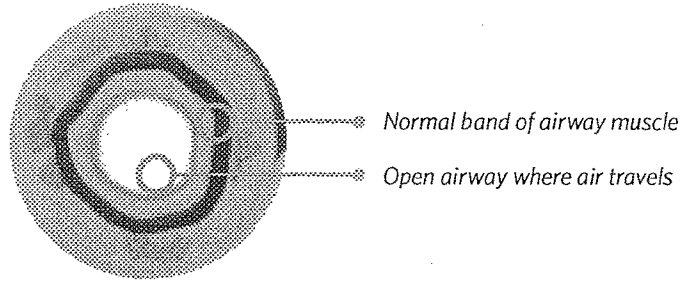
Figure 4. Placement of Alair tube in your lungs



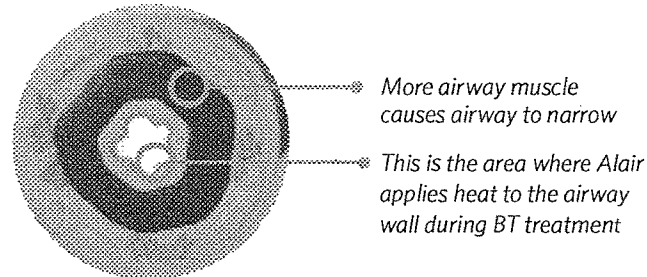
4. Heat the wires on the end of the small Alair™ tube to reduce some of the airway muscle tissue. You won't feel this because your doctor gave you medicine. See **Figure 5** for how airways look before and after Bronchial Thermoplasty treatment.

Figure 5. Airways before and after BT treatment

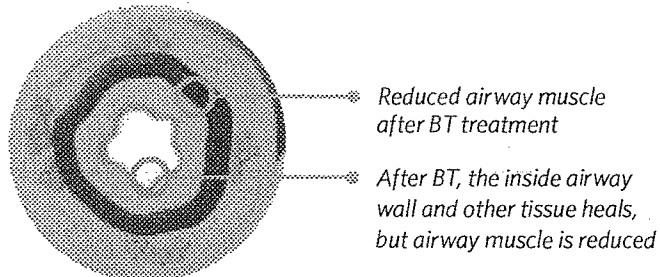
Airway of person without asthma



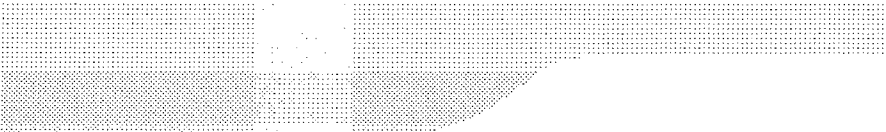
Airway of person with severe asthma



Airway of person with severe asthma after treatment



5. Move the small Alair tube to more places and treat them the same way.
6. Take the small Alair tube and the bronchoscope out.
7. Watch over you as you wake up and recover.



What happens after each BT treatment?

- * You need to take a 50 mg steroid pill the day after.
- * Your doctor will contact you by phone to check on you:
 - The day after your treatment
 - The day after that, and
 - A week after your treatment
- * You will still need to take your asthma medicine.

After your airways heal from your first treatment, you will go back to your doctor for your second treatment. Your doctor will treat more of your airways. After you get well from that, your doctor will treat the rest of your airways in your third treatment.

Use your rescue inhaler if your asthma symptoms get bad. Tell your doctor if you needed to use your rescue inhaler.

When to call the doctor?

If you have this treatment, contact your doctor if your asthma symptoms get worse and do not get better after using your rescue inhaler.

Brief Statement of Relevant Indications for Use, Contraindications, Warnings, and Adverse Events:

The Alair™ Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists. The Alair System is not for use in patients with an active implantable electronic device or known sensitivity to medications used in bronchoscopy. Previously treated airways of the lung should not be retreated with the Alair System. Patients should be stable and suitable to undergo bronchoscopy. The most common side effect of BT is an expected transient increase in the frequency and worsening of respiratory-related symptoms.

Thank you for considering
this important new treatment
for severe asthma.


www.BTforAsthma.com

Where to learn more about
the Alair™ System and BT

- Contact your doctor, or
- Call Boston Scientific toll free:
877-810-6060

**Boston
Scientific**

Boston Scientific Corporation
One Boston Scientific Place
Natick, MA 01760-1537
www.BTforAsthma.com

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates.
© 2013 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved. 12217 Rev. A 2013-03

BSC000569



**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

DELIVERED BY THE ALAIR[®] SYSTEM



**A New Procedure
for Severe Asthma in
Adults**

BSC000575

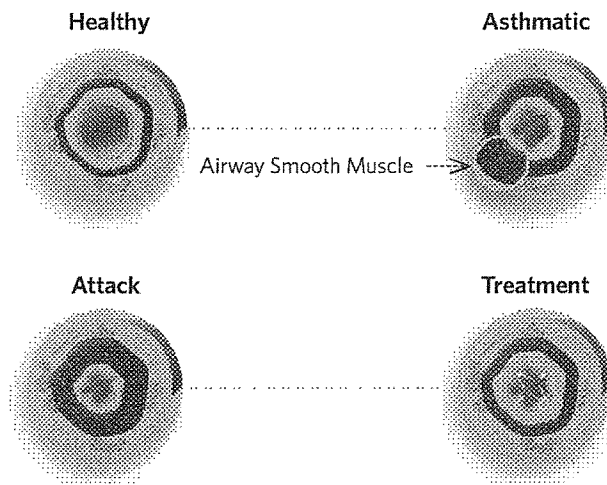
➤ **Bronchial Thermoplasty Provides Asthma Control 365 Days a Year**

Bronchial thermoplasty (BT) is a non-drug procedure for severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists such as Advair®, Symbicort® and Dulera®.

➤ **How it Works**

The Alair® Bronchial Thermoplasty System (the "Alair® System") delivers thermal energy to the airway wall in a precisely controlled manner in order to reduce excessive airway smooth muscle (ASM). Reducing airway smooth muscle decreases the ability of the airways to constrict, thereby reducing the frequency of asthma attacks.

Airway Cross Sections



➤ **The BT Procedure**

BT is a minimally invasive bronchoscopic procedure performed in three outpatient procedure visits, each treating a different area of the lungs and scheduled approximately three weeks apart. After all three procedures are performed, the bronchial thermoplasty treatment is complete.

➤ **BT Complements Asthma Medications**

BT is expected to complement current asthma maintenance medications by providing long-lasting asthma control and improving asthma-related quality of life of patients with severe asthma.



➤ BT Benefits and Risks

One year follow-up indicates...

Benefits of BT

- 32 % reduction in asthma attacks
- 84 % reduction in emergency room visits for respiratory symptoms
- 73 % reduction in hospitalizations for respiratory symptoms
- 66 % reduction in days lost from work/school/ other daily activities due to asthma
- Improved asthma quality of life
- Stable safety profile observed out to 5 years

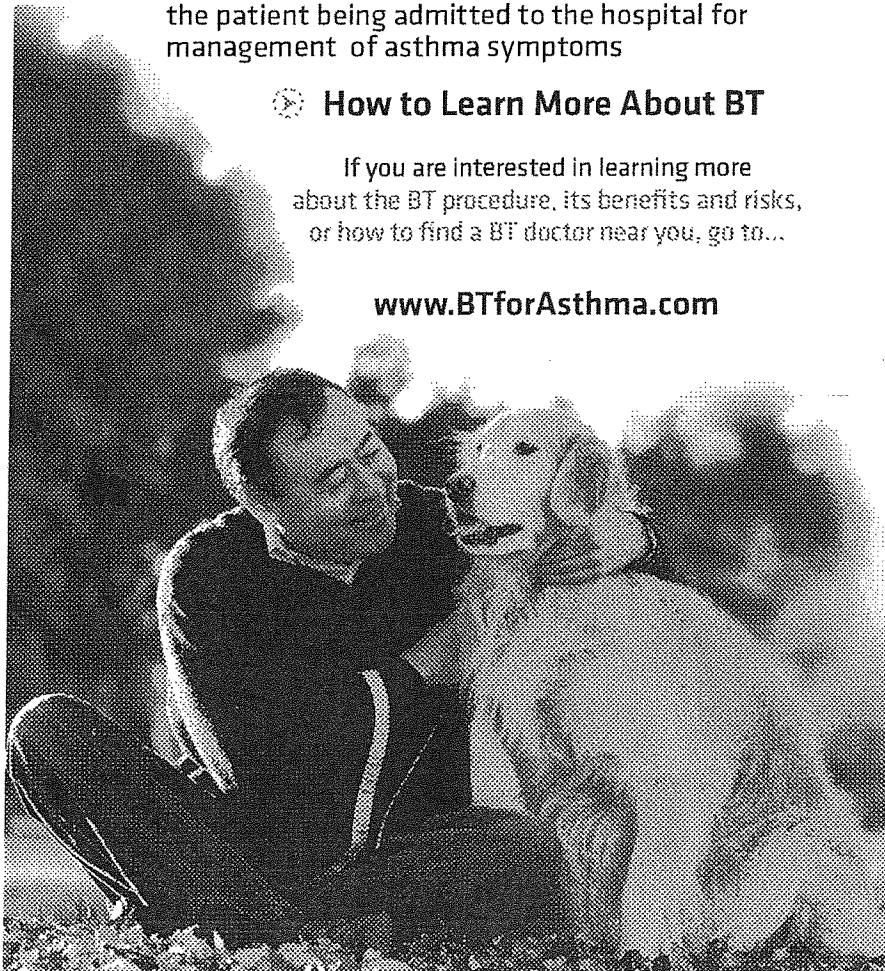
Risks of BT?

- In the period immediately following BT, there is an expected increase and worsening of asthma -related respiratory symptoms
- These events typically occur within a day of the procedure and resolve on average within seven days with standard care
- There is a small possibility (3.4% per procedure) that the temporary worsening of asthma symptoms after a procedure may result in the patient being admitted to the hospital for management of asthma symptoms

➤ How to Learn More About BT


If you are interested in learning more about the BT procedure, its benefits and risks, or how to find a BT doctor near you, go to...

www.BTforAsthma.com



Thank you for considering
this important new
treatment for severe
asthma.

For more information:
Toll Free: 877-810-6060
www.BTforAsthma.com

Alair, Asthmatx, , and IT'S ABOUT BREATHING
are trademarks or registered trademarks of Asthmatx, Inc.
Copyright © 2001 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates.
All rights reserved.

ADVAIR is a registered trademark of GlaxoSmithKline
Symbicort is a registered trademark of AstraZeneca
DULERA is a trademark of Schering Corp., a subsidiary of Merck & Co., Inc.


Asthmatx
A Boston Scientific Company

Asthmatx Inc.
888 Ross Drive, Suite 100
Sunnyvale, CA 94089

www.asthmatx.com

Brief Statement of Relevant Indications for Use, Contraindications, Warnings, and Adverse Events: The Alair® Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long acting beta agonists. The Alair® System is not for use in patients with an active implantable electronic device or known sensitivity to medications used in bronchoscopy. Previously treated airways of the lung should not be retreated with the Alair® System. Patients should be stable and suitable to undergo bronchoscopy. The most common side effect of BT is an expected transient increase in the frequency and worsening of respiratory-related symptoms.

10-090 Rev. B

BSC000578

New Procedure for Asthma

Living with asthma: Transformed.

days a year.

A Procedure for Long Lasting Control
of Severe Asthma, 365 Days a Year.

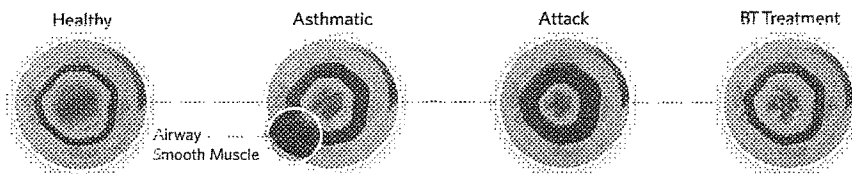
**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**
DELIVERED BY THE ALAIR® SYSTEM

Ask your doctor about...

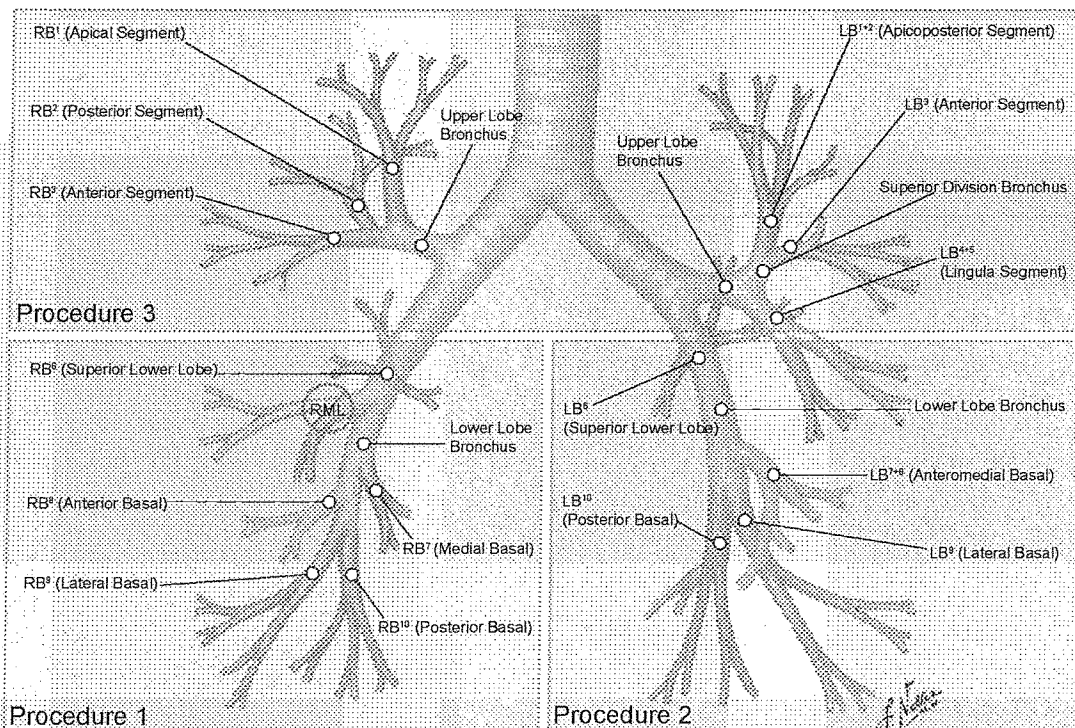
Bronchial Thermoplasty for Treatment of Severe Asthma in Adults

Bronchial thermoplasty (BT) is an outpatient, bronchoscopic procedure that delivers precisely controlled thermal energy to reduce excess airway smooth muscle that is associated with airway constriction in patients with asthma. BT is indicated for use in adults 18 and over with severe asthma not well controlled with available medication.

Airway Cross Section



BT Procedure Lung Map





Boston
Scientific

BT.
Because your world
is bigger
than your asthma.

ex-couch potato

**It's not a medication.
It's revolutionary and long-lasting relief for severe asthma.**

If asthma is limiting your options, perhaps it's time to look beyond medication alone. Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT), delivered by the Alair™ System, is a safe outpatient procedure clinically proven to provide a long-lasting reduction in asthma attacks for patients with severe asthma, with benefits maintained out to 5 years.¹ Fewer asthma attacks means less need for the associated oral steroid treatment—and its side effects.

In addition, BT provided a significant improvement in asthma-related quality of life for 79% of patients.²

Request your FREE DVD and learn more at BTforAsthma.com/living.

Brief Statement of Relevant Indications for Use, Contraindications, Warnings, and Adverse Events:

The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists. The Alair System is not for use in patients with an active implantable electronic device or known sensitivity to medications used in bronchoscopy. Previously treated airways of the lung should not be treated with the Alair System. Patients should be stable and suitable to undergo bronchoscopy. The most common side effect of BT is an expected transient increase in the frequency and worsening of respiratory-related symptoms. Rx only.


CAUTION: Law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Indications, contraindications, precautions, and warnings can be found with product labeling.

References: 1. Wechsler M, et al; for the AIR2 Trial Study Group [published ahead of print September, 2013]. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.08.009. 2. Castro M, et al, for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2011;107:65-70.

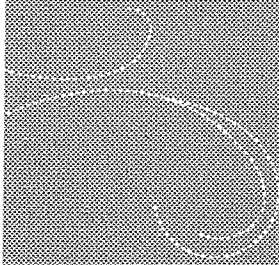
NOW AVAILABLE from Boston Scientific
for the treatment of severe asthma in adults



**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. © 2013 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved. ENDO-195004-AA October 2013

BSC000586



Thank you for considering this
important new treatment for
severe asthma.

www.BTforAsthma.com

▶ Where to learn more
about the Alair[®] System
and BT

- Contact your doctor, or
- Call:

Boston Scientific
Toll Free: 877-810-6060

© 2012 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.
12032 BTforA



**Boston
Scientific**

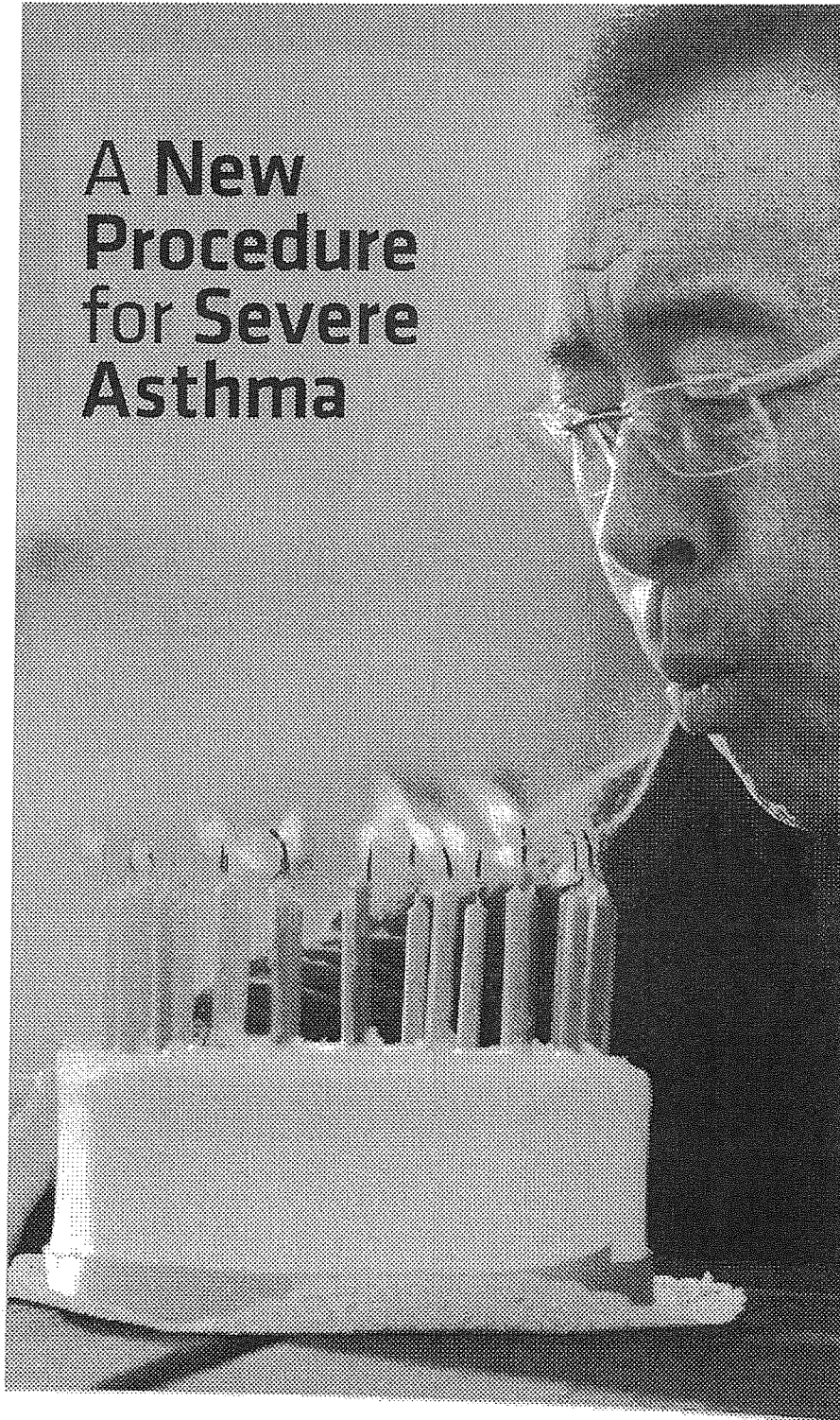
Boston Scientific Corporation
888 Ross Drive, Suite 100
Sunnyvale, CA 94089

www.BTforAsthma.com

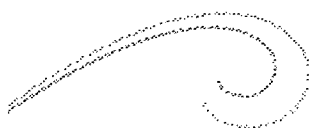


BSC000609

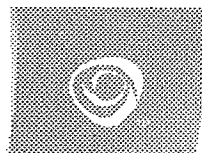
A New Procedure for Severe Asthma



Ⓢ This brochure describes a new procedure
for treating severe asthma in adults.



**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**
DELIVERED BY THE ALAIR® SYSTEM



Contents

About Severe Asthma	2
Why do doctors do this treatment?	2
What is the Alair® System?	2
What is Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT)?	3
Who can have this treatment? (Indication for Use)	3
Who cannot have this treatment? (Contraindications)	3-4
What are the risks and side effects of BT?	5-6
What are the benefits of BT?	7
What will happen if you decide to have the BT treatment for your severe asthma?	8-9
What happens after each BT treatment?	10
When to call the doctor?	10



About Severe Asthma

What happens when you have severe asthma?

Air travels in and out of your lungs through airways, which are tubes. There are tiny muscles in the walls of the airways. People who have severe asthma have larger muscles in their airways than other people. The airways close down when these muscles contract.

What happens when your airways close down?

When airways close down it can be harder to breathe. Your chest may feel tight. You may wheeze or cough. Asthma medicines usually open up the airways. These medicines do not always work well in patients who have severe asthma.

Why do doctors do this treatment?

You have severe asthma. Your asthma is severe because the asthma drugs you take now do not control your asthma symptoms.

Your doctor wants to use the Alair® System to treat your severe asthma. This treatment is called Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT). BT is a procedure and not an asthma medicine. Your doctor thinks your health is good enough to have this treatment.

If you decide to have this treatment, you will need to do what your doctor asks you to do or you may be harmed.

What is the Alair® System?

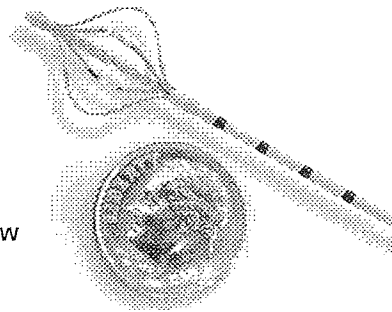
The Alair® System is the tool that your doctor will use to perform BT. The Alair® System has two main parts:

- ♦ A small tube with 4 wires at the end. See Figure 1.

Figure 1: Actual size of tip of Alair tube

- * A machine that heats the wires

You need to decide if BT is right for you. You will be treated by a doctor who has been trained and knows how to use it correctly.



What is Bronchial Thermoplasty?

The Alair® System mildly heats your airway walls. This heating reduces some of the extra muscle present in the airways. This may allow your airways to stay more open and help you breathe better.

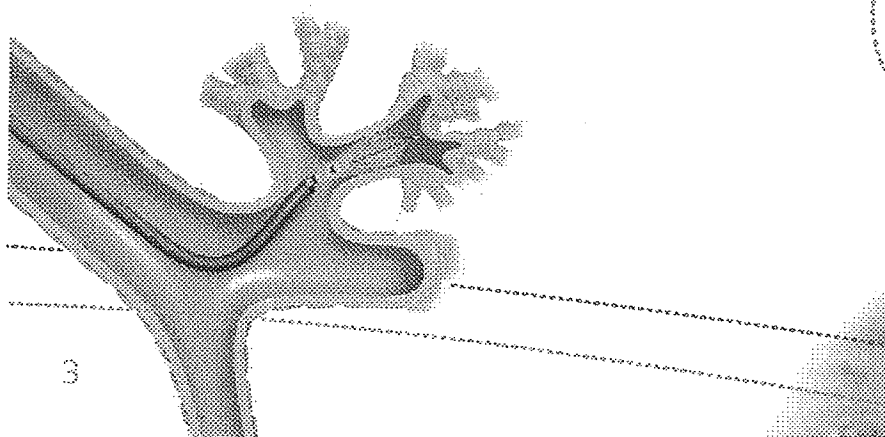
Who can have this treatment? (Indication for Use)

The Alair® Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long acting beta agonists.

Who cannot have this treatment? (Contraindications)

You cannot have this treatment if you have:

- ◊ An implant with electronics. Tell your doctor if you have any implants with electronics, such as a pacemaker. BT may keep the implant from working correctly.
- ◊ Problems taking certain medicines. Tell your doctor if you have ever had a problem taking any kind of medicines. Your doctor will use some medicines to perform BT. Your doctor needs to make sure the medicine he or she uses will not hurt you.
- ◊ Have had this treatment before. Tell your doctor if you have had BT before.
- ◊ You cannot have this treatment if you are less than 18 years old. No one has tested BT in patients younger than 18 years.



You cannot have this treatment while the following conditions are present:

- ✧ An active respiratory infection. Tell your doctor if you think you have an infection, fever, or your asthma is worse than usual. If your infection is in your lungs or airway, BT may harm you.
- ✧ Have had an asthma attack or changed your oral corticosteroid dose in the last 2 weeks. Tell your doctor if either of these happened in the last 2 weeks. If you have had an asthma attack or changed your oral corticosteroid dose in the last 2 weeks, BT may harm you.
- ✧ A blood clotting problem. Tell your doctor if you take any drugs to keep your blood from clotting. Some call these drugs blood thinners. If you have a blood clotting problem, BT may harm you.

Clinical Study

In 2007, doctors studied nearly 300 patients who had severe asthma. In this study, they saw how well BT worked and what side effects patients had. Doctors treated about 200 people with BT. This was the "BT Group". Doctors treated another group in a similar way, but they did not heat their airways. This was the "Sham Group". Patients did not know which group they were in. Doctors studied these patients for a year after their last treatment. We do not know how well patients did beyond one year. This is still being studied.



What are the risks and side effects of BT?

Right after their doctors treated them, many patients in the study had side effects. Table 1 shows how many people had each side effect. The table shows side effects that occurred in 3 or more out of every 100 patients in the BT group.

How to read this table:

- ✦ Short Term: from start of first treatment until 6 weeks after third treatment.
- ✦ Long Term: from 6 weeks after last treatment until 1 year after last treatment.
- ✦ In the table, some patients had more than one side effect.
- ✦ Look at Table 1.
 - ✦ Think of a group of 100 patients.
 - ✦ Look at the column that says "Short Term Period".
 - ✦ Go down that column to the row that reads "more than one symptom of asthma."
 - ✦ This row means that 52 out of every 100 patients in the BT Group had "more than one symptom of asthma" sometime after their first treatment until 6 weeks after their third treatment.
 - ✦ On the same row, now look at the "Long Term Period" column.
 - ✦ You see there were 27 out of every 100 patients in the BT Group who had "more than one symptom of asthma" in the long term period.
 - ✦ The 52 and the 27 are not separate groups of patients. Some patients may be counted in both groups:
 - ✦ One or more patients who had a "Short Term Period" effect may have also had a "Long Term Period" effect. Meaning he or she did not get better.
 - ✦ One or more patients who did not have a "Short Term Period" effect may have had a "Long Term Period" effect. Meaning he or she got worse later.
 - ✦ One or more patients who had a "Short Term Period" effect may not have had a "Long Term Period" effect. Meaning their problem went away.

Other side effects related to the lungs, ear, nose and throat occurred in the Short Term or Long Term Periods in the BT group. The following side effects occurred in 1 or more out of every 100 patients in the BT group, but less often than the side effects in Table 1: abnormal breath sounds, acute swelling of the airways, blocked airways, bleeding during the procedure, bloody mucus, bloody nose, chest.

Table 1: Short Term and Long Term Side Effects

Type of Side Effect	Short-Term Period		Long-Term Period	
	BT Group	Sham Group	BT Group	Sham Group
Related to Breathing				
OUT OF EVERY 100 PATIENTS				
More than one symptom of asthma	52	39	27	43
Wheezing	15	6	4	3
Chest pain	14	13	3	1
Cough	12	14	3	5
Shortness of breath	11	6	2	1
Chest discomfort	9	10	2	1
Infection in the lower airways	8	2	3	6
Productive cough	7	9	3	4
Collapse of part of the lung	5	0	0	0
Swelling of the airways	4	2	7	5
Bleeding	3	0	0	0
Related to Ear, Nose and Throat				
Infection in the upper airways	20	11	30	26
Swelling of the nose and/or throat	5	7	11	5
Throat irritation	5	12	1	3
Infection in the upper airways caused by a virus	4	2	6	7
Sinusitis	3	5	6	7
Acute Sinusitis	3	2	4	8
Sore throat	3	5	1	2
Allergic rhinitis	2	3	4	4
Rhinitis	2	0	4	6
All Other				
Headaches	14	9	5	3
Back pain	5	6	3	5
Fever	4	2	0	1
Influenza	4	2	4	12
Upset stomach	4	2	2	4
Anxiety	4	0	1	2
Nausea	3	4	1	1
High blood pressure	3	2	3	3
Urinary tract infection	1	1	3	1

*One instance of bleeding occurred 31 days after a BT treatment and was treated with a medical procedure.

congestion, increased mucus in upper airways, infection in the lower airways caused by a virus, low oxygen in the blood, narrowing of airways, nasal congestion, pneumonia, runny nose, and swelling of the throat caused by a virus.

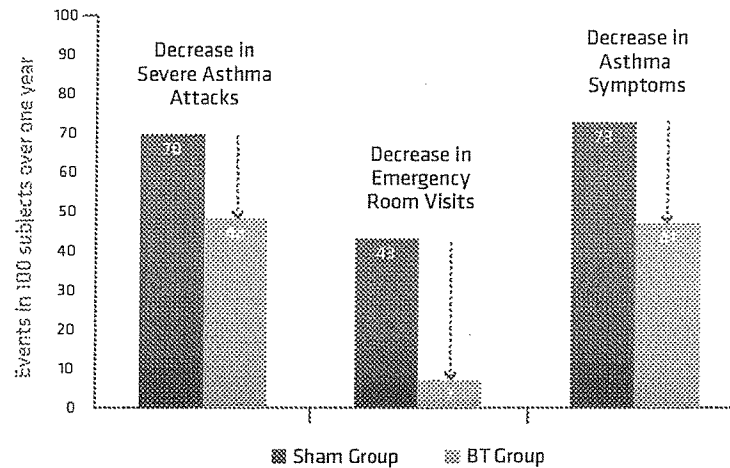
Ask your doctor about other uncommon side effects that are not related to the lungs, ear, nose and throat.

Benefits

What are the benefits of BT?

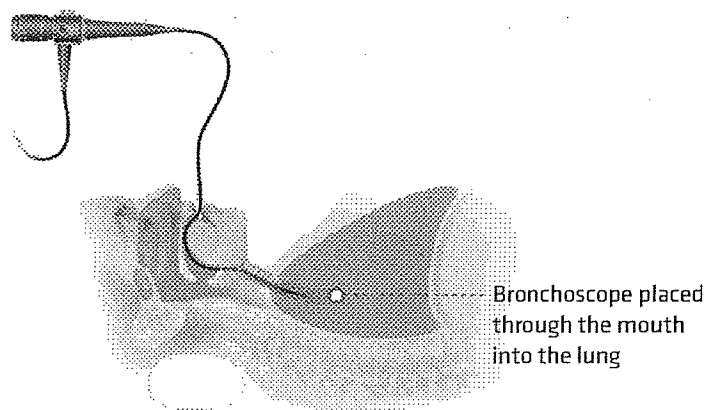
The study showed that the people in the BT Group had fewer severe asthma attacks, visits to the emergency room, and asthma symptoms as shown in Figure 2.

Figure 2 Benefits of BT



The BT Group also lost on average 3 fewer days per patient from work, school, or other daily activities due to asthma symptoms. This was for one year after treatment compared to the Sham Group. This is not shown in Figure 2.

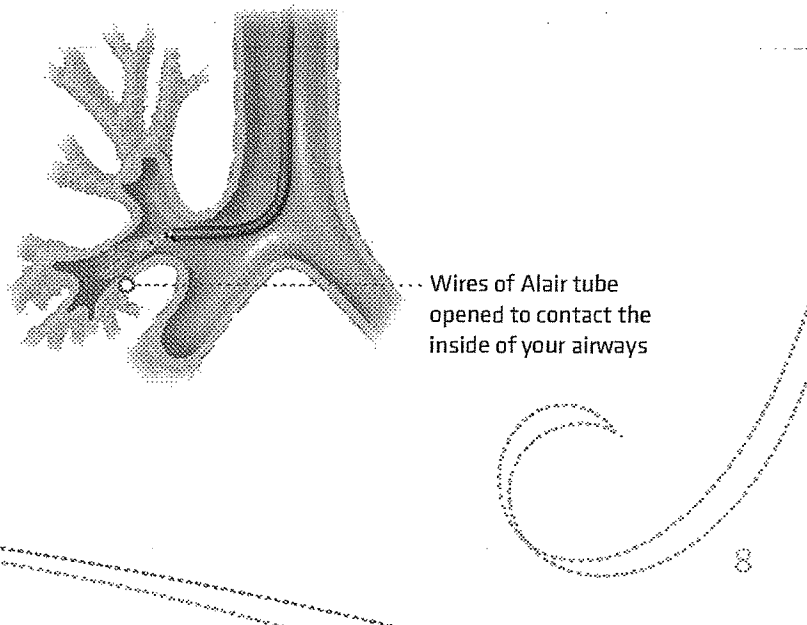
Figure 3. Placement of Bronchoscope into your lungs



What will happen if you decide to have the BT treatment for your severe asthma?

- ✧ There will be 3 treatments. There will be 3 weeks in between each treatment.
- ✧ You will prepare for each treatment by taking a 50-mg steroid pill by mouth once a day for 3 days before the treatment.
- ✧ You will also take a 50-mg steroid pill on the day of the treatment.
- ✧ On each BT treatment day, your doctor will test your lungs. He or she will do this by checking how much air you can blow out.
- ✧ Your doctor will make sure you don't have an infection. An infection would delay the treatment.
- ✧ Your doctor will tell you what he or she will do during BT.
- ✧ Your doctor will:
 1. Give you medicines to make you sleepy.
 2. Put a small tube called a bronchoscope through your mouth into your airways. See Figure 3.
 3. Put the smaller Alair tube through the bronchoscope. The wires on its end will touch your airways. See Figure 4.

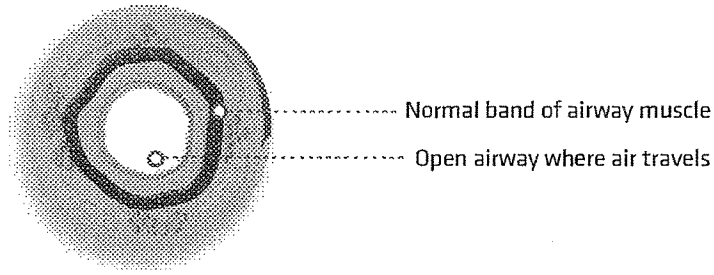
Figure 4. Placement of Alair tube in your lungs



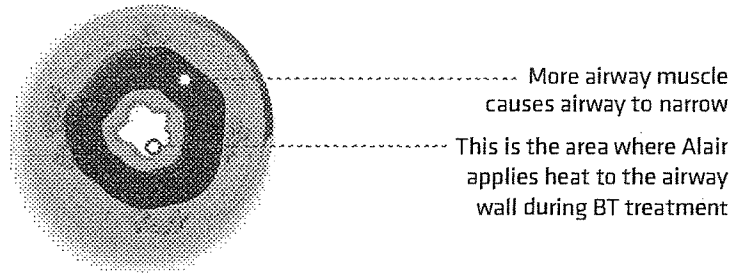
4. Heat the wires on the end of the small Alair tube to reduce some of the airway muscle tissue. You won't feel this because your doctor gave you medicines. See Figure 5 for how airways look before and after BT treatment.

Figure 5. Airways Before and After BT Treatment

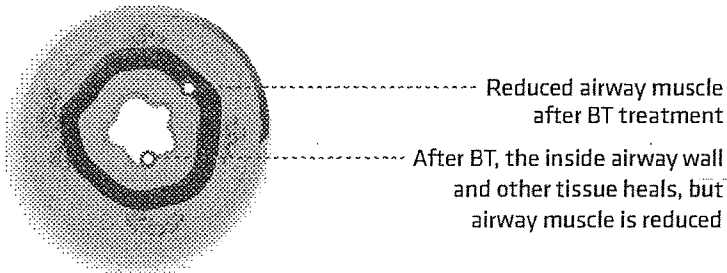
Airway of Person without Asthma



Airway of Person with Severe Asthma



Airway of Person with Severe Asthma after Treatment



5. Move the small Alair tube to more places and treat them the same way.
6. Take the small Alair tube and the bronchoscope out.
7. Watch over you as you wake up and recover.

What happens after each BT treatment?

- * You have to take a 50-mg steroid pill the day after.
- * Your doctor will contact you by phone to check on you:
 - * The day after your treatment
 - * The day after that, and
 - * A week after your treatment
- * You will still have to take your asthma medicine.

After your airways heal from your first treatment, you will go back to your doctor for your second treatment. Your doctor will treat more of your airways. After you get well from that, your doctor will treat the rest of your airways in your third treatment.

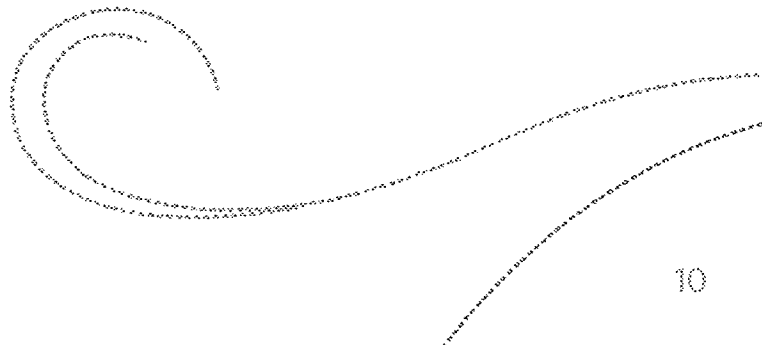
Use your rescue inhaler if your asthma symptoms get bad.
Tell your doctor if you needed to use your rescue inhaler.

When to call the doctor?

If you have this treatment, contact your doctor if your asthma symptoms get worse and do not get better after taking your rescue inhaler.

Brief Statement of Relevant Indications for Use, Contraindications, Warnings, and Adverse Events:

The Alair® Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long acting beta agonists. The Alair® System is not for use in patients with an active implantable electronic device or known sensitivity to medications used in bronchoscopy. Previously treated airways of the lung should not be retreated with the Alair® System. Patients should be stable and suitable to undergo bronchoscopy. The most common side effect of BT is an expected transient increase in the frequency and worsening of respiratory-related symptoms.



New Procedure for Asthma

Living with asthma. Transformed.

days a year.

A Procedure for Long Lasting Control
of Severe Asthma, 365 Days a Year.



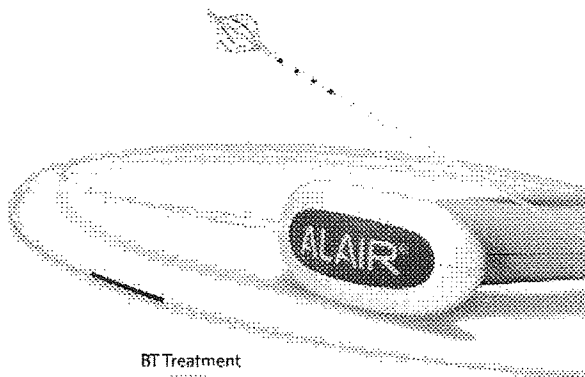
**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

DELIVERED BY THE ALAIR® SYSTEM

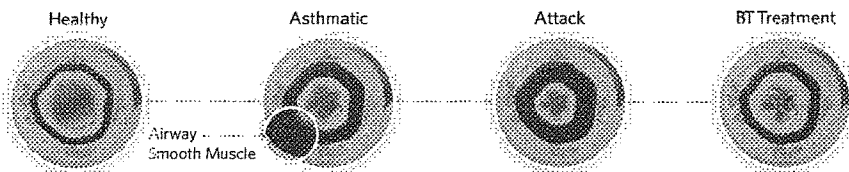
Ask your doctor about...

Bronchial Thermoplasty for Treatment of Severe Asthma in Adults

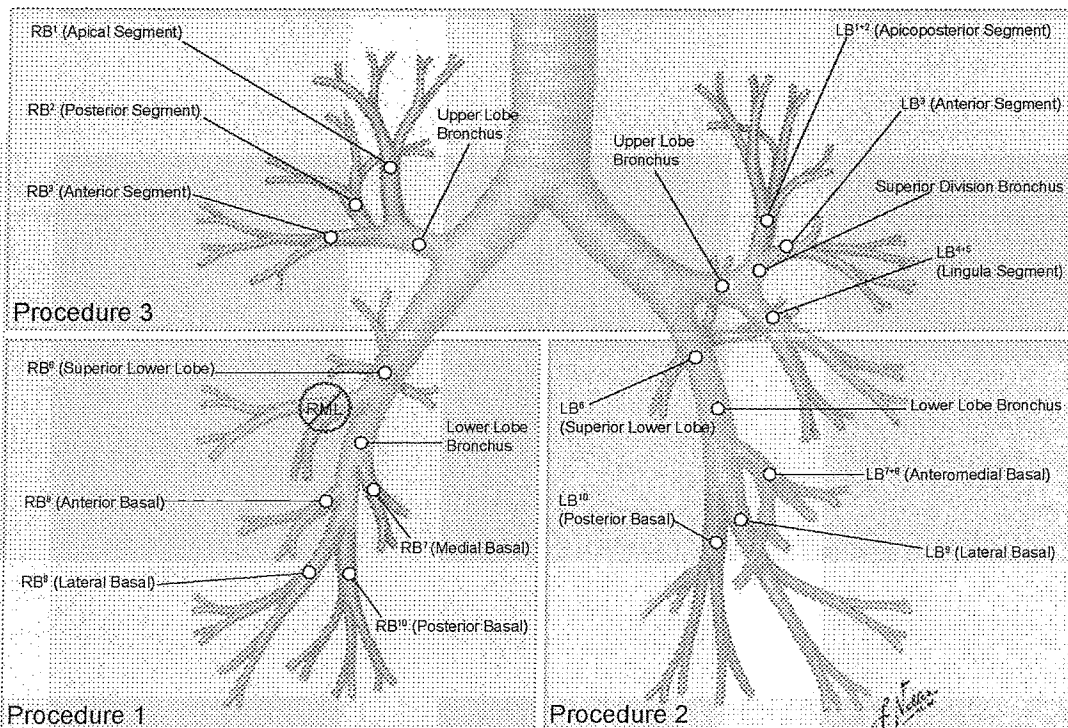
Bronchial thermoplasty (BT) is an outpatient, bronchoscopic procedure that delivers precisely controlled thermal energy to reduce excess airway smooth muscle that is associated with airway constriction in patients with asthma. BT is indicated for use in adults 18 and over with severe asthma not well controlled with available medication.



Airway Cross Section



BT Procedure Lung Map





BT.

Because their world
is bigger
than their asthma.

Boston
Scientific

Bronchial Thermoplasty— Long-lasting benefits clinically proven for patients with severe asthma

**NEW
5 YEAR
DATA**

In the **Asthma Intervention Research 2 (AIR2) Trial**, one of the largest sham-controlled medical device trials in pulmonary medicine, patients with severe asthma showed significant improvement compared to sham-controlled patients 1 year after treatment with Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) delivered by the Alair™ System. The **AIR2 Trial 5-Year Extension Study** evaluated the sustained effectiveness and safety of BT out to 5 years in BT-treated patients from the AIR2 Trial.^{1,2}

Fewer exacerbations, with effectiveness maintained out to 5 years

- 32% decrease in severe asthma exacerbations (requiring systemic corticosteroids) at 1 year compared with sham-controlled patients¹
- Reduction in percentage of patients experiencing exacerbations seen at 1 year maintained out to 5 years (primary endpoint)²

Additionally, 48% decrease (average over 5 years) in the rate of severe exacerbations, compared with 12 months prior to BT treatment²

- The decrease in severe exacerbations over 5 years included a substantial reduction in the use of systemic corticosteroids to treat those exacerbations²
- Fewer asthma exacerbations means reduced need for the associated oral steroid treatment and its side effects

Fewer emergency room visits, with effectiveness maintained out to 5 years

- 84% reduction in emergency room visits for respiratory symptoms at 1 year compared to sham-controlled patients¹
- Reduction in ER visits seen at 1 year maintained out to 5 years²

Additionally, 88% decrease (average over 5 years) in the rate of ER visits for respiratory symptoms, compared with 12 months prior to BT treatment²

Percent of patients
with severe exacerbations
5-year
average decrease

44%

Percent of patients
requiring ER visits for
respiratory symptoms
5-year
average decrease

78%

n = 162 (85% retention rate at Year 5)


**View the 5-year clinical trial
results at BTat5years.com**

NOW AVAILABLE from Boston Scientific
for the treatment of severe asthma in adults



**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

BSC000698



"BT has become an important addition to our treatment armamentarium for patients with severe persistent asthma who remain symptomatic despite taking ICS and LABA."

— Wechsler M, et al. *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology*. 2013.

Bronchial Thermoplasty—

Established, long-term effectiveness and safety in the treatment of severe asthma

Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT), delivered by the Alair™ System, is a safe and minimally invasive outpatient procedure clinically proven to provide a long-lasting reduction in asthma exacerbations and respiratory-related ER visits for patients with severe asthma. Additional benefits include:

Quality-of-life improvement

- 79% of patients who were treated with BT reported a significant improvement in their asthma-related quality of life¹

Fewer absences

- 66% fewer asthma-related days lost from work, school, and other activities at 1 year compared with sham-controlled patients¹

Long-term safety maintained out to 5 years

- No increase in hospitalizations, asthma symptoms, or respiratory adverse events over the course of 5 years²
- No structural changes in airways that were clinically significant were due to BT at 5 years (based on high-resolution CT review)²
- No clinically significant deterioration in lung function (FEV₁) at 5 years²


As with any procedure, there are risks, and individual results may vary. The most common adverse event of BT is a temporary worsening of respiratory-related symptoms. These events typically occur within one day of the BT procedure and usually resolve within a week with standard care. There is a small risk (3.4% per procedure) that symptoms may require hospitalization.

View the 5-year clinical trial results at BTat5years.com

Brief Statement of Relevant Indications for Use, Contraindications, Warnings, and Adverse Events: The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists. The Alair System is not for use in patients with an active implantable electronic device or known sensitivity to medications used in bronchoscopy. Previously treated airways of the lung should not be retreated with the Alair System. Patients should be stable and suitable to undergo bronchoscopy. The most common adverse event of BT is an expected transient increase in the frequency and worsening of respiratory-related symptoms. Rx only.

CAUTION: Law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Indications, contraindications, precautions, and warnings can be found with product labeling.

References: 1. Castro M, et al; for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;181:116-124. 2. Wechsler M, et al; for the AIR2 Trial Study Group [published ahead of print September, 2013]. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.08.009.

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. © 2013 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved. ENDO-187802-AD March 2014

NOW AVAILABLE from Boston Scientific
for the treatment of severe asthma in adults



**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

BSC000699



BT.

Because their world
is bigger
than their asthma.

Boston
Scientific

ex-couch potato

Established long-term effectiveness and safety

Newly published data confirm Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT), delivered by the Alair™ System, as a safe and minimally invasive procedure that provides a long-term reduction in asthma exacerbations for patients with severe asthma.

**NEW
5 YEAR
DATA**

Fewer respiratory-related emergency room visits

- **84% reduction in emergency room visits** for respiratory symptoms at 1 year compared with sham-controlled patients, with reduction maintained out to 5 years^{1,2}

Fewer exacerbations, with effectiveness maintained out to 5 years

- **32% decrease in severe asthma exacerbations** (requiring systemic corticosteroids) at 1 year compared with sham-controlled patients, with reduction maintained out to 5 years^{1,2}

—The decrease in severe exacerbations over 5 years included a substantial reduction in the use of systemic corticosteroids associated with those exacerbations²

- No increase in hospitalizations, asthma symptoms, or respiratory adverse events over 5-year period²


View the 5-year clinical trial results at BT5years.com

Brief Statement of Relevant Indications for Use, Contraindications, Warnings, and Adverse Events:

The Alair Bronchial Thermoplasty System is indicated for the treatment of severe persistent asthma in patients 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists. The Alair System is not for use in patients with an active implantable electronic device or known sensitivity to medications used in bronchoscopy. Previously treated airways of the lung should not be retreated with the Alair System. Patients should be stable and suitable to undergo bronchoscopy. The most common adverse event of BT is an expected transient increase in the frequency and worsening of respiratory-related symptoms. Rx only.

CAUTION: Law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Indications, contraindications, precautions, and warnings can be found with product labeling.

References: 1. Castro M, et al, for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2010;181:116-124. 2. Wechsler M, et al; for the AIR2 Trial Study Group [published ahead of print September, 2013]. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.08.009.

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. © 2013 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved. ENDO-192112-AA October 2013

NOW AVAILABLE from Boston Scientific
for the treatment of severe asthma in adults



**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

BSC000700



Bronchial Thermoplasty

NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals  UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC *Zip Code*



Support for patients

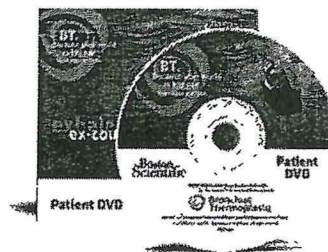
Physician information request

[Home](#) > [Request more information](#) > [Support for patients](#)

Start your BT journey with a FREE DVD
and continued support

Ready for a bigger world with fewer asthma attacks?

Complete the fields below to request
your **FREE DVD** and connect with the
BT 1-2-3 Support Program



Thank you for your interest in Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT). Your requested information is on its way to you. In the meantime, we invite you to explore the BTforAsthma.com website to learn more about this revolutionary procedure. If you have questions about BT, talk to your doctor or call our patient support line at 1-877-810-6060.



If you have any questions, please call our patient support line at 877-810-6060.

BSC Privacy Policy

**Bronchial
Thermoplasty**

NEW 5 YEAR DATA

For Health Care Professionals



UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?FIND A BT CLINIC [Zip Code](#)**BT.****Because your world is bigger
than your asthma.****Take the Asthma
Impact Survey****Are you a BT
candidate?****About asthma****Current treatment
options****Connect to the
BT 1-2-3
SUPPORT PROGRAM**

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

START HERE

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT

[Home](#) > [Are you a BT candidate?](#) > [Are you a BT candidate?](#)

Are you a BT candidate?

You may be eligible for Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) treatment if:

You are 18 years or older with severe asthma, AND

<http://www.btforasthma.com/is-it-right-for-you/is-bronchial-thermoplasty-right-for-you>

BSC000812

You have asthma symptoms despite taking inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists such as Advair[®], Dulera[®], or Symbicort[®].

Take the Asthma Impact Survey to discover more about how asthma symptoms may be affecting your life.

You are not a candidate for BT if:

You have a pacemaker, internal defibrillator, or other implantable electronic device.

You have a known sensitivity to medications required to perform bronchoscopy, including lidocaine, atropine, and benzodiazepines.

You've been treated previously with BT.

Who performs the BT procedure?

BT is performed by a specially trained pulmonologist. If your regular doctor currently managing your asthma is an allergist, family practice physician, general practitioner, internist or other physician, he or she will be able to refer you to a BT Clinic for a consultation with a pulmonologist. After your BT treatment is completed, you will return to your regular asthma doctor to manage your asthma.

For help with discussing this treatment with your doctor:

Complete the Asthma Impact Survey.

Share your survey results with the physician who manages your asthma.

All trademarks are the property of their respective owners.




Learn more about BT with this FREE DVD for patients with asthma.



"It's amazing to see the difference. I feel like the sky's the limit."

Hear patients with severe asthma talk about life before and after BT.

Brought to
you by **Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. © 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

HOME U.S. NOTICES INTERNATIONAL NOTICES
SITE MAP

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014

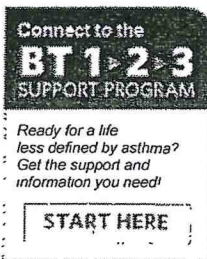


NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

[ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?](#)[FIND A BT CLINIC](#) [Zip Code](#)[Take the Asthma Impact Survey](#)[Are you a BT candidate?](#)[About asthma](#)[Current treatment options](#)[Home](#) > [Are you a BT candidate?](#) > [Take the Asthma Impact Survey](#)

How much does asthma affect your quality of life?

See for yourself: If asthma is limiting the choices you make in life, perhaps it's time to look beyond medication alone. The following survey was created by a doctor and can help you recognize the many ways severe asthma may be affecting your life.

<http://www.btforasthma.com/is-it-right-for-you/self-assessment?q=11,11,11,11,11,11>

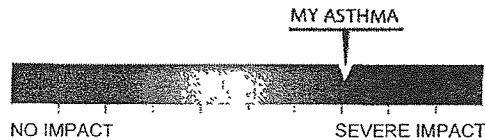
BSC000814

Be sure to share your answers with your doctor—and discover how Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) may help you live a fuller life. BT, delivered by the Alair® System, is not another medication—it's a revolutionary and safe procedure proven to provide a long-lasting reduction in asthma attacks.¹

THE ASTHMA IMPACT SURVEY™

Congratulations on taking an important step
toward a new life with fewer asthma attacks

Your responses indicate that asthma has a
severe impact
on your quality of life



Print my Survey results and letter to my doctor here.

This survey is a diagnostic tool to assess the impact asthma has on your daily lifestyle. You should check with your doctor to make sure that you are taking your medication appropriately and consistently. Your medication dosage may need to be adjusted to help provide better symptom control. If you are taking the maximum tolerated medication regularly and continue to have asthma symptoms that impact your daily life, you may be a candidate for the BT treatment and you should consult an asthma specialist to learn more about your options.

Take this survey and the letter with you to your doctor. It will help your doctor determine whether you might be a candidate for BT.

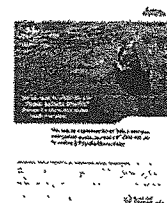
Asthma Impact Survey™ © 2002 by Quality Metric Incorporated. All Rights Reserved.
Asthma Impact Survey™ is a trademark of Quality Metric Incorporated.

References:

1. Wechsler M, et al, for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2013;132:1295-1302.



Learn more about BT with
this FREE DVD for
patients with asthma.





NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

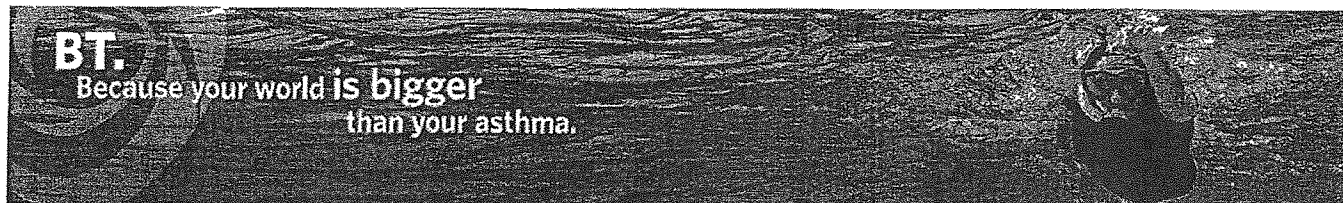
UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC Zip Code

**US availability****International
Availability**

Connect to the
BT 1 2 3
SUPPORT PROGRAM

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

START HERE

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT.

[Home](#) > [Find a BT Clinic](#) > [US availability](#)

Find a BT Clinic

Type in your zip code or click on a state on the US map to see a list of physicians offering Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) in that state.

Boston Scientific maintains an updated list of physicians who are trained to perform BT. The list is based upon location only.

<http://www.btforasthma.com/find-clinic/physician-locator>

BSC000817

If there isn't a BT Clinic in your area, [contact Boston Scientific](#).

Not in the United States? [View a list of hospitals outside of the US with BT Clinics](#)

(* Required)

Zip Code: *

How far are you willing to travel? *

50 miles

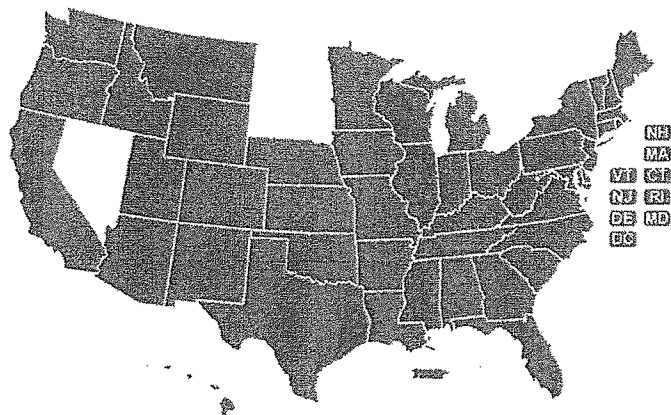


[Search](#)

OR


Find Physicians in your state:

Select



Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW:



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

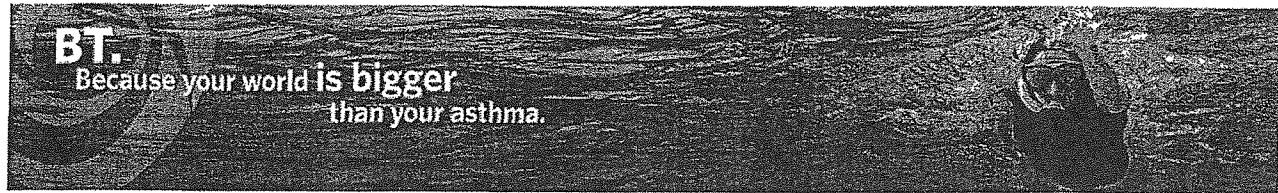
ENDO-142305-AE April 2014



NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

[REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS](#)[ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?](#)[FIND A BT CLINIC](#) [Zip Code](#)[Patient stories](#)[Physician stories](#)[In the news](#)[Press releases](#)

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

[START HERE](#)

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT.

[Home](#) > [Real people, real results](#) > [Patient stories](#)

Real people, real results

Listen and watch as people with severe asthma discuss the dramatic difference Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) has made in their lives.

Please note that individual BT treatment results may vary. BT is an add-on therapy that supplements your current asthma medications. BT, delivered by the Alair[®] System, is

indicated for the treatment of severe asthma in people 18 years and older whose asthma is not well controlled with inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists.



Angel's Story

"I've been able to cut the grass. I've been able to work on my car. I wasn't able to travel. I've been able to travel, something I haven't done for years."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Laretta's Story

"Now I can live life and go and do those fun activities that I hadn't done before. If you really want to live life and you really don't want a disease that's controlling your life or defining you, have BT."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Mike's and Jenny's Story

"I just feel like I'm free... I feel like the sky's the limit."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Chris's Story

"It was a moment of revelation. It's that sun breaking through the clouds and you go, 'It worked.'"

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



Debbie's Story

"I noticed doing things around the house, things that I would get out of breath with before. Like carrying up laundry from the basement, just something as simple as that... I wasn't as winded."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



John's Story

"I've gone from torture to being able to live my life, I feel like I've got a second chance."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)

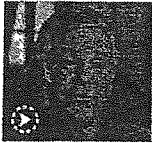


Brenda's Story

"I would highly recommend this to somebody else. It's just a simple procedure and it's a great benefit."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)

Jeff's Story



"My life has changed due to the treatment in a way that I'm not afraid to go hiking in the mountains."

[VIEW VIDEO](#)



How much does asthma limit your choices?


[Take this short quiz to find out.](#)



[Learn more about BT with this FREE DVD for patients with asthma.](#)

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alex and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

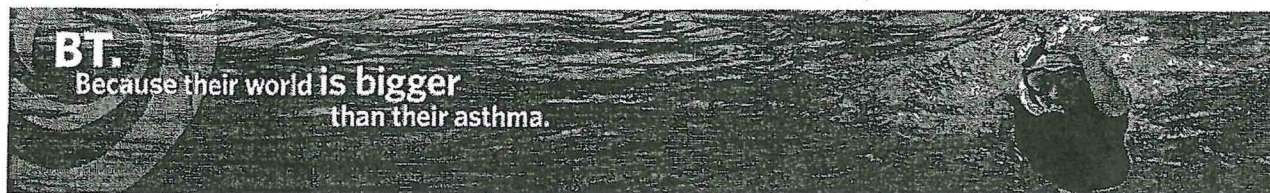
ENDO-142305-AE April 2014



BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

UNITED STATES

FIND A BT CLINIC Zip Code



Overview for Physicians

Performing BT

The Alair™ System

Clinical Studies

AIR2 Trial

RISA Trial

Bibliography

Home > Healthcare Professionals > Overview for Physicians

Do your asthma patients know what they are missing?

Now, a revolutionary procedure can help them lead a fuller life.

Frequent asthma exacerbations can have a profound impact on a patient's lifestyle. Severe asthma places limitations on work, school, and other activities. However, patients may not acknowledge—or even recognize—that their asthma symptoms are severe. Over time, these patients may try to avoid exacerbations by modifying daily activities—even those that they enjoy.

Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT), delivered by the Alair™ System, is a safe, minimally invasive outpatient procedure for the treatment of severe asthma in adults. If you have patients who you believe may benefit from this procedure, the information in this section will help you identify the appropriate BT candidates.

Who is appropriate for BT?

Adult patients with severe asthma (at least 18 years old)

Patients whose asthma is not well controlled despite taking a combination of inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists such as Advair™, Symbicort™, or Dulera™

Patients able to safely undergo bronchoscopy per hospital guidelines

Help your patients recognize severe asthma: The online [Asthma Impact Survey](#) is intended to help you determine how asthma may be influencing the choices your patient makes every day.

A recent study has shown that the interference of asthma with daily activities is a key predictor for the risk of future exacerbations.¹ In fact, in an analysis of the quality-of-life survey you see here, patients with severe health impairment related to asthma were 70% to 4 times as likely to manifest adverse outcomes like ER visits and oral corticosteroid use.²

Who is *not* appropriate for BT?

Patients who have a pacemaker, internal defibrillator, or other implantable electronic device

Patients who have a known sensitivity to medications required to perform bronchoscopy, including lidocaine, atropine, and benzodiazepines

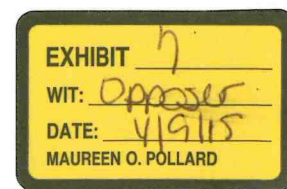
Patients who have previously been treated with BT

BT should be delayed when any of the following conditions are present:

Active respiratory infection

Asthma exacerbation or changing dose of systemic corticosteroids (up or down) in the past 14 days

Known coagulopathy



Patient is unable to stop taking anticoagulants, antiplatelet agents, aspirin, or non-steroidal anti-inflammatory medications (NSAIDs) before the procedure with physician guidance

Who performs the BT procedure?

Pulmonologists who are experienced in bronchoscopy

BT training is required, and includes:

- Review of Alair System Catheter Directions for Use and Controller Operator's Manual
- Guided didactic instruction in computer simulation-based Bronchial Thermoplasty Learning Center
- Detailed in-service training of the Alair System
- Hands-on training with Alair System in a lung model prior to initial cases
- Proctoring of initial cases by Boston Scientific Health Care Industry Representative (HCIR)
- Ongoing support of cases when requested

Where is the procedure performed?

At facilities that are appropriately equipped to perform bronchoscopy and are equipped to handle respiratory emergencies

How is the procedure performed?

[Click here to view the video](#)

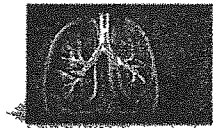
Review a complete list of [indications for use, contraindications and precautions](#).

If you would like to refer a patient for BT or are interested in performing the procedure yourself, please complete the [Physician information request form](#).

References.

1. Schatz M, et al *Chest* 2012;41:66-72
2. Schatz M, et al *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;128;1:44-49.e1.

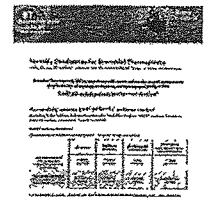
All trademarks are the property of their respective owners.



See how BT works

View an animation of the BT procedure in: [English](#), [Français](#), [Deutsch](#), [Italiano](#), or [Español](#)

[Find out why physicians are excited about bringing BT to patients with severe asthma.](#)



Help your patients recognize severe asthma by



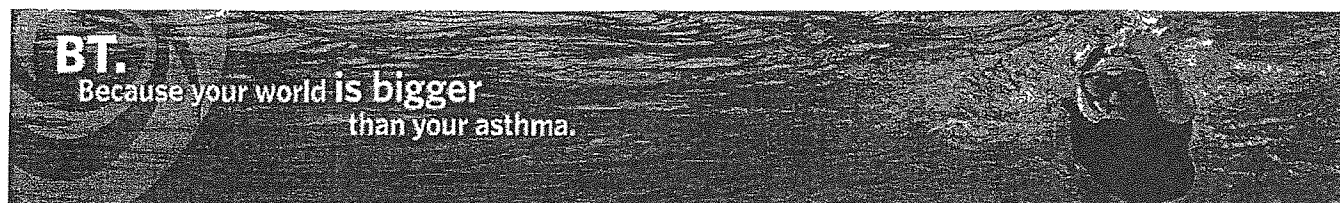
NEW 5 YEAR DATA For Health Care Professionals

UNITED STATES

BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

FIND A BT CLINIC [Zip Code](#)**Support for
patients****Physician
information
request****Connect to the
BT 1-2-3
SUPPORT PROGRAM**

Ready for a life
less defined by asthma?
Get the support and
information you need!

START HERE

By submitting, I agree
to receive occasional,
relevant information
about BT.

[Home](#) > [Request more information](#) > [Physician information request](#)

Physician information request

If you would like more information on Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT), please complete the information requested below and a representative from Boston Scientific will follow up with you.

<http://www.btforasthma.com/get-more-info/physician-info-request>

BSC000828

Please select one of the following:

☐ I am interested in referring patients for Bronchial Thermoplasty treatment.

☐ I currently provide or am interested in providing Bronchial Thermoplasty treatments to patients.

(* Required)

Title	<input type="text" value="Please Select..."/>
Specialty	<input type="text" value="Please Select..."/>
First Name *	<input type="text"/>
Last Name *	<input type="text"/>
Hospital/Clinic *	<input type="text"/>
Address 1 *	<input type="text"/>
Address 2	<input type="text"/>
City *	<input type="text"/>
State *	<input type="text" value="Please Select..."/>
Zip/Postal code*	<input type="text"/>
Country	<input type="text"/>
Phone	<input type="text"/>
Email *	<input type="text"/>

I currently perform bronchoscopy ☐ Yes ☐ No

I perform approximately the following number of bronchoscopies per month

I see in my office the following number of severe asthma patients per month

How did you hear about us? *

☐ I am interested in learning more about the BT training program

☐ I am interested in referring a patient(s) for BT


☐ I would like to receive more information on BT

Comments:

Boston Scientific Corporation
150 Baytech Drive
San Jose, CA 95134
T: 877-810-6060 F: 408-419-0199

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Alair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. © 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW:



SHARE

HOME U.S. NOTICES INTERNATIONAL NOTICES
SITE MAP

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014



BRONCHIAL THERMOPLASTY

REAL PEOPLE, REAL RESULTS

ARE YOU A BT CANDIDATE?

UNITED STATES

FIND A BT CLINIC Zip Code

BT.**Because their world is bigger
than their asthma.****Overview for
Physicians****Performing BT****The Alair™ System****Clinical Studies****AIR2 Trial****RISA Trial****Bibliography**[Home](#) > [Healthcare Professionals](#) > [Clinical Studies](#)**NEW
5 YEAR
DATA****Exacerbations reduced ▶****ER visits decreased ▶****Safety maintained ▶****Established long-term effectiveness and safety:****5 years of clinical trial follow-up data****12+ years of clinical experience**

Asthma Intervention Research 2 (AIR2) Trial: At 1 year, patients with severe asthma showed significant improvement in their asthma-related quality of life after treatment with Bronchial Thermoplasty (BT) delivered by the Alair™ System:

Quality of life improvement: 79% of patients who were treated with BT reported a significant improvement in their asthma-related quality of life¹

Fewer absences: 66% fewer asthma-related days lost from work, school, and other activities, compared with sham-controlled patients¹

AIR2 Trial 5-Year Extension Study: This study evaluated the sustained effectiveness of BT beyond 1 year, and the safety of BT out to 5 years in the BT-treated patients from the AIR2 Trial.²

**Fewer exacerbations, with effectiveness maintained
out to 5 years**

32% decrease in severe asthma exacerbations (requiring systemic corticosteroids) at 1 year, compared with sham-controlled patients¹

Reduction in exacerbations seen at 1 year maintained out to 5 years²

—44% average decrease over 5 years in the percentage of patients having severe exacerbations, compared with 1 year prior to BT treatment²

Over 5 years, patients treated with BT experience an average decrease in severe exacerbation event rate[†]

48%



n = 162 (85% retention at Year 5)
[†]Events per patient per year; compared with 12 months prior to BT treatment

5-year reduction in severe exacerbations requiring systemic corticosteroids

The decrease in severe exacerbations over 5 years included a substantial reduction in the use of systemic corticosteroids associated with those exacerbations²

Fewer asthma exacerbations means reduced need for the associated oral steroid treatment and its side effects

Fewer emergency room visits, with reduction maintained out to 5 years

84% reduction in emergency room visits for respiratory symptoms at 1 year, compared to sham-controlled patients¹

Reduction in ER visits seen at 1 year maintained out to 5 years²

—78% average decrease over 5 years in the percentage of patients experiencing ER visits for respiratory symptoms, compared with 1 year prior to BT treatment²

ER visits for respiratory symptoms
5-year rate
average decrease*

88%



n = 162 (85% retention at Year 5)
*Events per patient per year; compared with 12 months prior to BT treatment

Safety maintained over 5 years

No increase was seen in hospitalizations, asthma symptoms, or respiratory adverse events over the course of 5 years²

No structural changes in airways that were clinically significant were due to BT at 5 years (based on high-resolution HRCT review)²

No clinically significant deterioration in lung function (FEV₁) at 5 years²

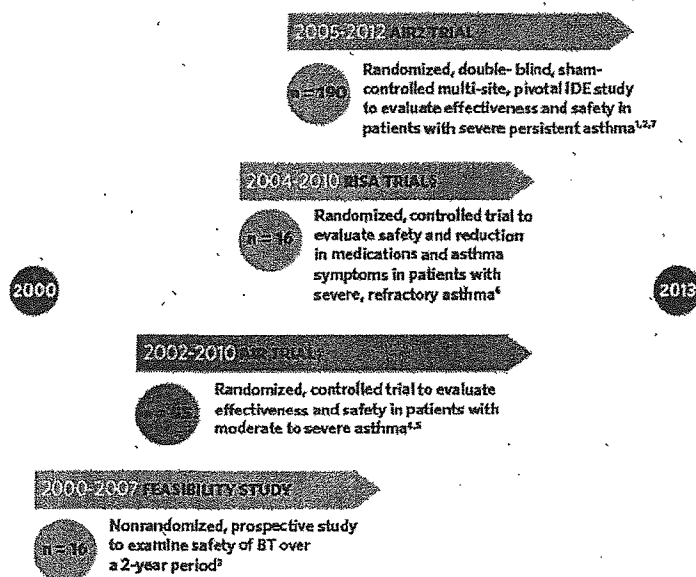
As with any procedure, there are risks, and individual results may vary. The most common adverse event of BT is a temporary worsening of respiratory-related symptoms. These events typically occur within one day of the BT procedure and usually resolve within a week with standard care. There is a small risk (3.4% per procedure) that symptoms may require hospitalization.

**CLICK HERE TO VIEW
5 YEAR DATA PUBLICATION**

Clinical studies for BT

BT has been studied in a rigorous, stepwise fashion beginning with animal studies, followed by 4 clinical studies in asthma patients, 3 of which were randomized, controlled clinical trials, and all with 5 years of follow-up. Two clinical studies focused on the severe asthma patient population.

The **Asthma Intervention Research 2 (AIR2) Trial** is one of the largest sham-controlled medical device trials in pulmonary medicine. At 1 year, patients with severe asthma treated with BT showed significant improvement compared to sham-controlled patients.^{1,2}



‡ Asthma Intervention Research (AIR)

§ Research in Severe Asthma (RISA)

Selected studies are shown below. Click on the individual trial name below for additional information on each clinical study.

[AIR2 Trial](#)

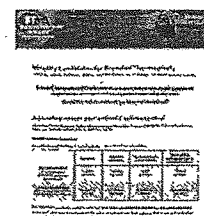
[RISA Trial](#)

REFERENCES:

1. Castro M, et al, for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2010;181:116-124.
2. Wechsler M, et al; for the AIR2 Trial Study Group [published ahead of print September, 2013]. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.08.009.
3. Cox G, et al. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2006;173:965-969.

4. Cox G, et al. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356:1327-1337.
5. Thomson N, et al, for the AIR Trial Study Group. *BMC Pulm Med*. 2011;11:9
6. Pavord I, et al, and the RISA Trial Study Group. *Am J Respir Care Med*. 2007;176:1185-1191.
7. Castro M, et al, for the AIR2 Trial Study Group. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2011;107:65-70.

[Find out why physicians are excited about bringing BT to patients with severe asthma.](#)




[Help your patients recognize severe asthma by downloading the Asthma Impact Survey.](#)

[Support for physicians](#)
[Request more information about BT, BT training opportunities, and referring patients for treatment.](#)

[To assist patients in finding a BT Clinic, click here.](#)

Brought to
you by

**Boston
Scientific**

Altair and  are registered trademarks of Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2014 Boston Scientific Corporation or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

FOLLOW:



SHARE

[HOME](#) [U.S. NOTICES](#) [INTERNATIONAL NOTICES](#)
[SITE MAP](#)

This information is for use only in countries with applicable health authority product registrations. The information on this site is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended or recommended as a substitute for professional medical advice or for diagnosis purposes.

CAUTION:

Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician. Refer to PRESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION for Indications for Use, Contraindications, Potential Complications, and Warnings and Precautions.

ENDO-142305-AE April 2014

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
BEFORE THE TRADEMARK TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

Opposition No. 91215699

In the matter of Application Serial No.:
85/806,379
Filed: December 19, 2012
For the mark: HOLAIRA
Published in the Trademark Official Gazette
on December 3, 2013

Boston Scientific Corp. and
Asthmatx, Inc.,

Opposers,

v.
Holaira, Inc.,

Applicant.

DEPOSITION OF MATTHEW W. SPRAGUE

Thursday, April 9th, 2015

1:57 p.m.

Held At:

Latham & Watkins, LLP
200 Clarendon Street
Boston, Massachusetts

REPORTED BY:

Maureen O'Connor Pollard, RMR, CLR, CSR #149108

1 APPEARANCES:

2 FOR THE OPPOSERS:

3 BY: BRADLEY J. WALZ, ESQ.

4 WINTHROP & WEINSTINE, PA

5 Capella Tower, Suite 3500

6 225 South Sixth Street

7 Minneapolis Minnesota 55402

8 612-604-6400

9 bwalz@winthrop.com

10
11 FOR THE APPLICANT:

12 BY: DENNIS E. HANSEN, ESQ.

13 OPPENHEIMER, WOLFF & DONNELLY, LLP

14 222 South Ninth Street, Suite 2000

15 Minneapolis, Minnesota 55402

16 612-607-7000

17 dhansen@oppenheimer.com

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

INDEX

EXAMINATION	PAGE
MATTHEW W. SPRAGUE	
BY MR. WALZ	4
BY MR. HANSEN	18

E X H I B I T S

NO.	DESCRIPTION	PAGE
-----	-------------	------

.....

NO EXHIBITS WERE MARKED

1 P R O C E E D I N G S

2

3 MATTHEW W. SPRAGUE,

4 having been first duly identified and sworn, was

5 examined and testified as follows:

6 DIRECT EXAMINATION

7 BY MR. WALZ:

8 Q. Thank you, Matt, thanks for taking the
9 time to be part of this.

10 Just to give you a little background
11 on the structure before we get started. So
12 Dennis and I have an agreement whereby I'm going
13 to have the first opportunity to take your
14 direct testimony.

15 A. Okay.

16 Q. Once that's complete, Dennis will have
17 an opportunity to cross-examine you. And then
18 following his cross-examination, I'll have an
19 opportunity to do any redirect on your
20 testimony.

21 A. Okay.

22 Q. So not that there are any surprises,
23 but that will be the structure for the day.

24 So could you -- by the way, before we
25 start, if you do need to take a break or you

1 want to take a break, please let us know. We
2 were flexible with Karen, we'll be flexible with
3 you. I guess the only caveat to that is if
4 you're in the middle of an answer, we'd like you
5 to finish the answer, and then we can break
6 after that.

7 A. Okay.

8 Q. So would you mind saying your name and
9 spelling it for the record?

10 A. Sure. Matthew Sprague, M-A-T-T-H-E-W,
11 S-P-R-A-G-U-E.

12 Q. And what is your education?

13 A. I have a finance degree, and an MBA.

14 Q. From what university?

15 A. My undergrad is at Bryant University,
16 and my MBA is at Babson.

17 Q. And what degrees did you obtain from
18 each?

19 A. Bachelor of science at Bryant, and it
20 was a Master's in business administration at
21 Babson.

22 Q. Any emphasis on the MBA?

23 A. No.

24 Q. What was your work experience prior to
25 Boston Scientific?

1 A. Coming out of school, I worked for a
2 large computer company called Digital Equipment
3 Corporation as a financial analyst, spent five
4 years there.

5 Then I went to what you call a
6 telecommunications OEM, we made hardware and
7 software. I was financial manager. I handled
8 some sales training, financial planning and
9 analysis, generally a finance role there for
10 approximately three years.

11 And then Boston Scientific.

12 Q. Okay. And when did you start at
13 Boston Scientific?

14 A. 2003.

15 Q. And what positions have you held at
16 Boston Scientific?

17 A. I started in our, what we call our
18 corporate FP&A group, our financial planning and
19 analysis group, so I was the manager of revenue
20 and gross margin analysis, manager of strategic
21 planning.

22 And then about six years ago I moved
23 to the current division that I lead now at the
24 endoscopy division as a manager, and I've had a
25 couple of roles since then. And now I'm the

1 controller of that group, which is to say the
2 head of finance for the division.

3 Q. Okay. And with respect to each
4 position that you've held at Boston Scientific,
5 approximately how much time have you spent in
6 each role?

7 A. So I've been in two groups, if you
8 will, one for five years and then one for six
9 years. In the first group that I was in for
10 five years, I probably averaged 18 months within
11 each role, but again within the same group, so I
12 just did a different position within that, same
13 manager, same group. And then I've had three
14 titles in six years, but again, same group
15 within endoscopy. So about two year average in
16 each stint, if you will, although I've been in
17 this job just over a year.

18 Q. Okay. And what were your job duties
19 with each position you held at Boston
20 Scientific?

21 A. Going back to 2003?

22 Q. Yes.

23 A. Job duties. So in my first role I was
24 responsible for reporting and analysis of
25 revenue for sales. I was responsible for

1 analyzing our gross margins, so understanding
2 the drivers of things like price, or what
3 impacts our gross margins, meaning revenue minus
4 the cost of that good that we sold gets you to
5 gross margin, so responsible for that.

6 I implemented -- or I helped, I led a
7 team, I was on a team to help implement
8 financial planning systems.

9 I helped to do some acquisition
10 analysis, and actually complete some
11 acquisitions.

12 Then when I moved over to endoscopy I
13 started off as -- I think my title was senior
14 manager of FP&A, financial planning and
15 analysis, so budgeting, forecasting, planning
16 for the group, as well as what we call general
17 accounting, closing the books. More acquisition
18 analysis. More -- you know, we bought Asthmatx,
19 so that was some of my role, and I continue to
20 do that now.

21 Business partner, if you will, to
22 other functions within the group to help them
23 with, again, make decisions, financial analysis,
24 things like that.

25 Q. So your role as the partner is just to

1 provide the financial guidance?

2 A. Guidance, yes.

3 [REDACTED]

4 [REDACTED]

5 [REDACTED]

6 [REDACTED]

7 [REDACTED]

8 [REDACTED]

9 [REDACTED]

10 [REDACTED]

11 [REDACTED]

12 [REDACTED]

13 [REDACTED]

14 [REDACTED]

15 [REDACTED]

16 [REDACTED]

17 [REDACTED]

18 [REDACTED]

19 [REDACTED]

20 [REDACTED]

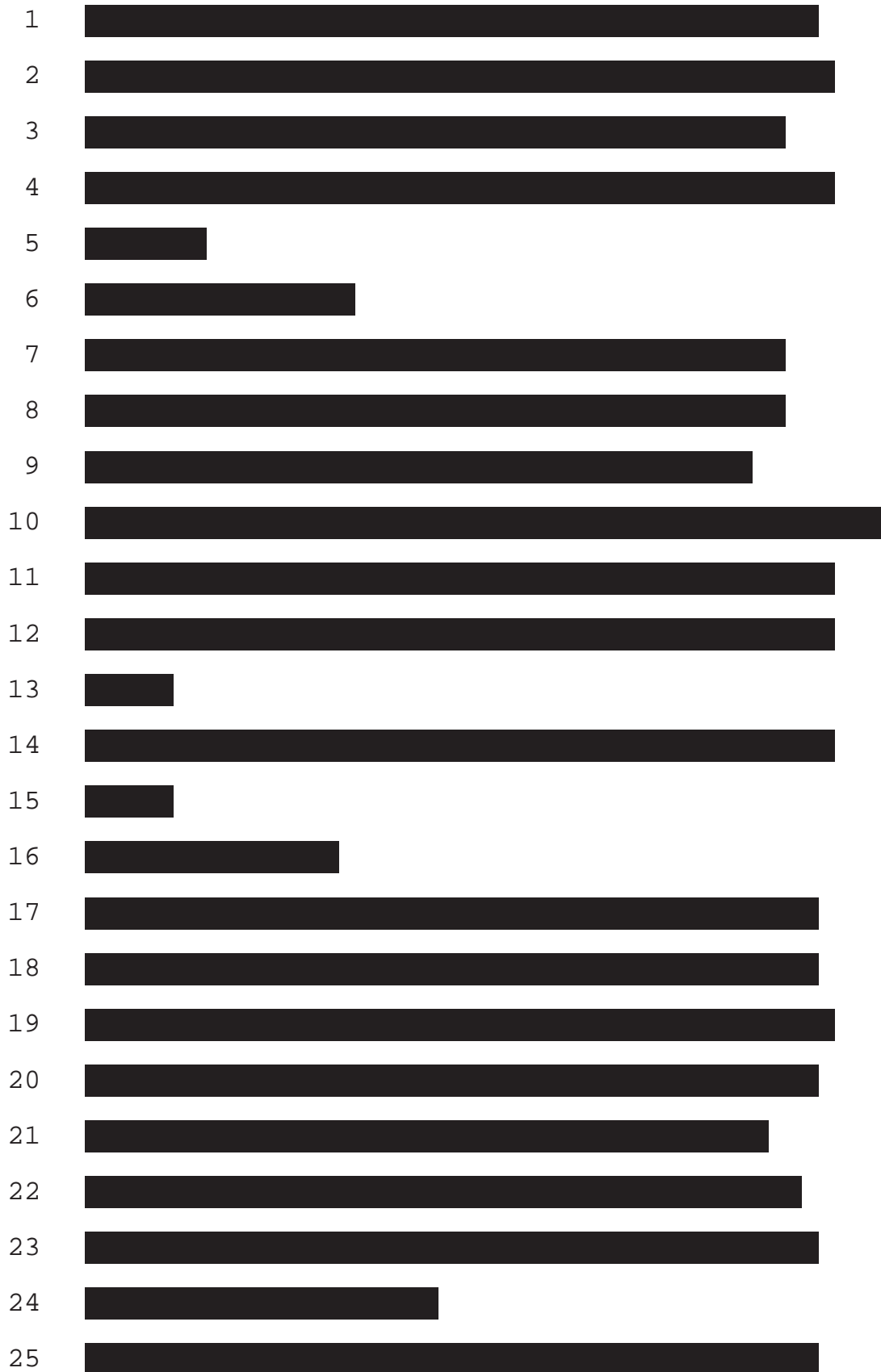
21 [REDACTED]

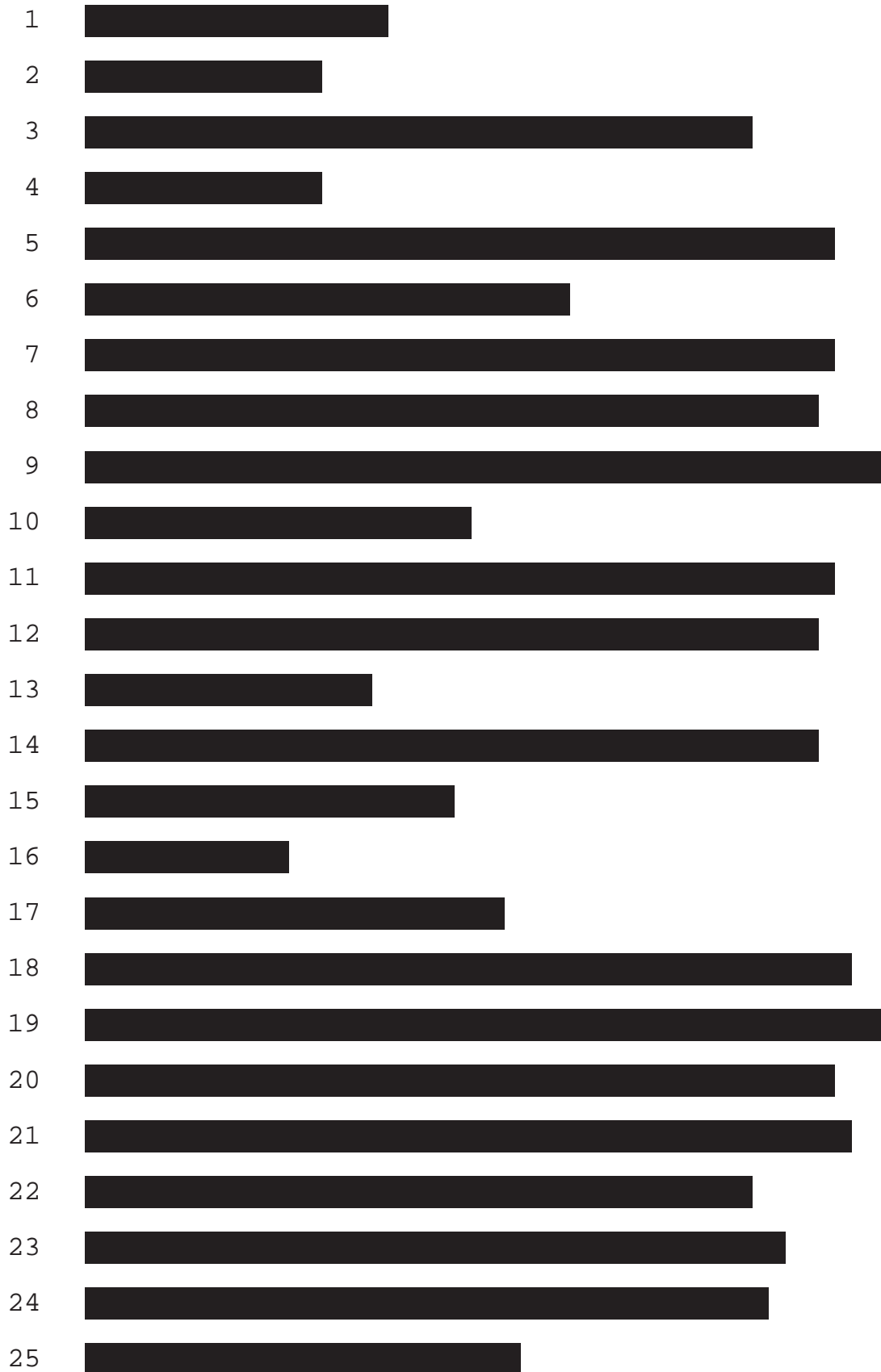
22 [REDACTED]

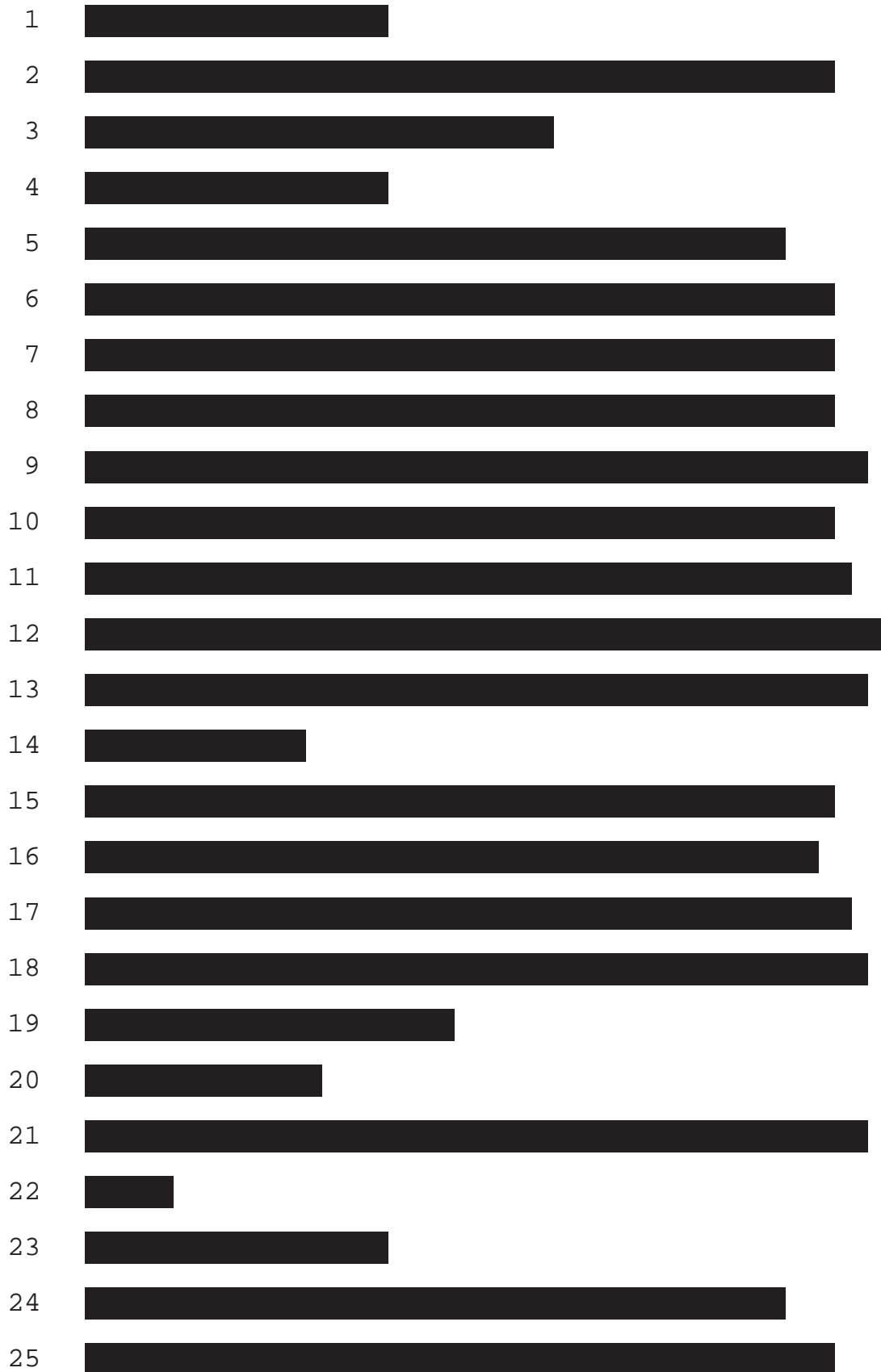
23 [REDACTED]

24 [REDACTED]

25 [REDACTED]

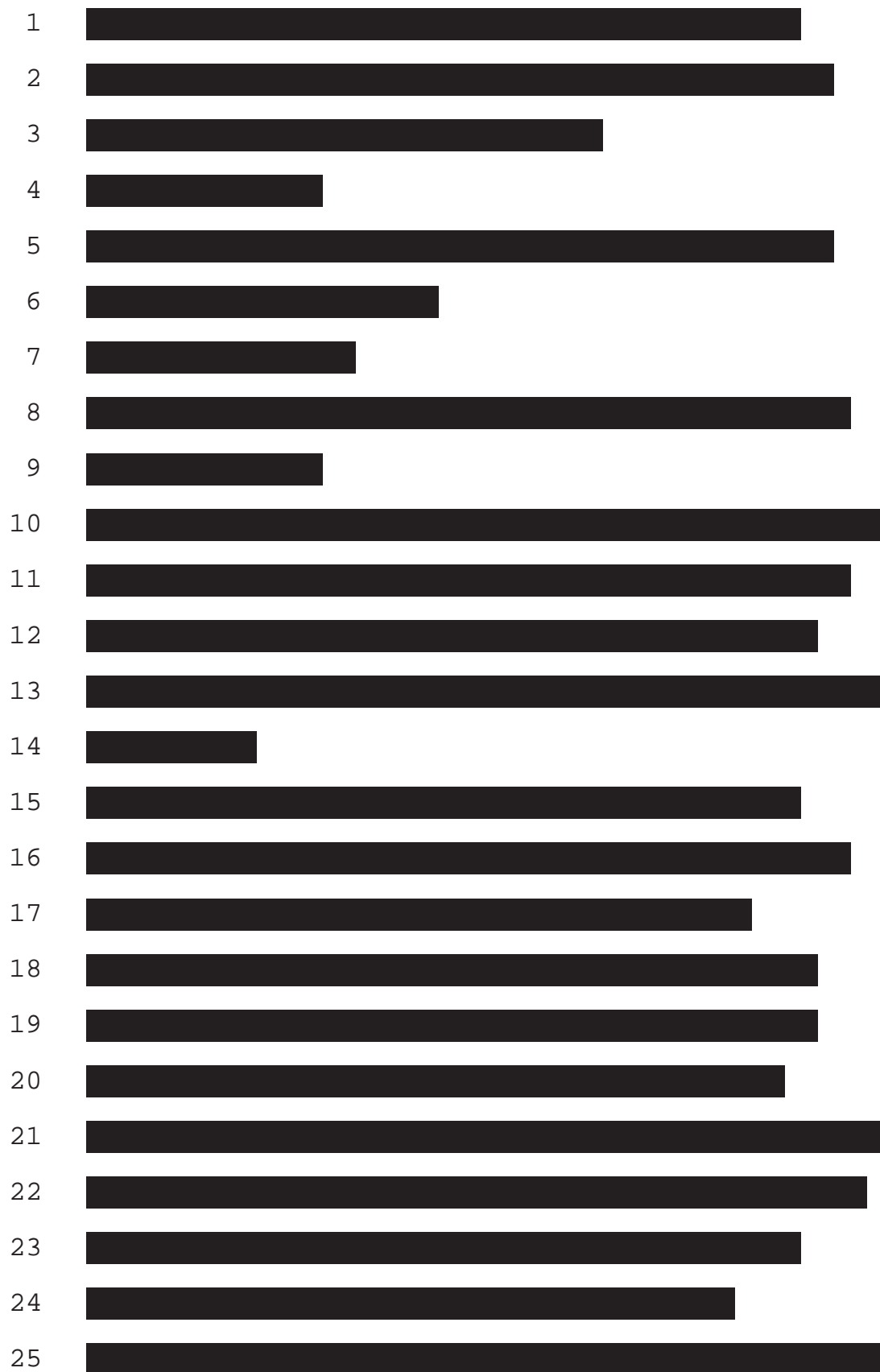




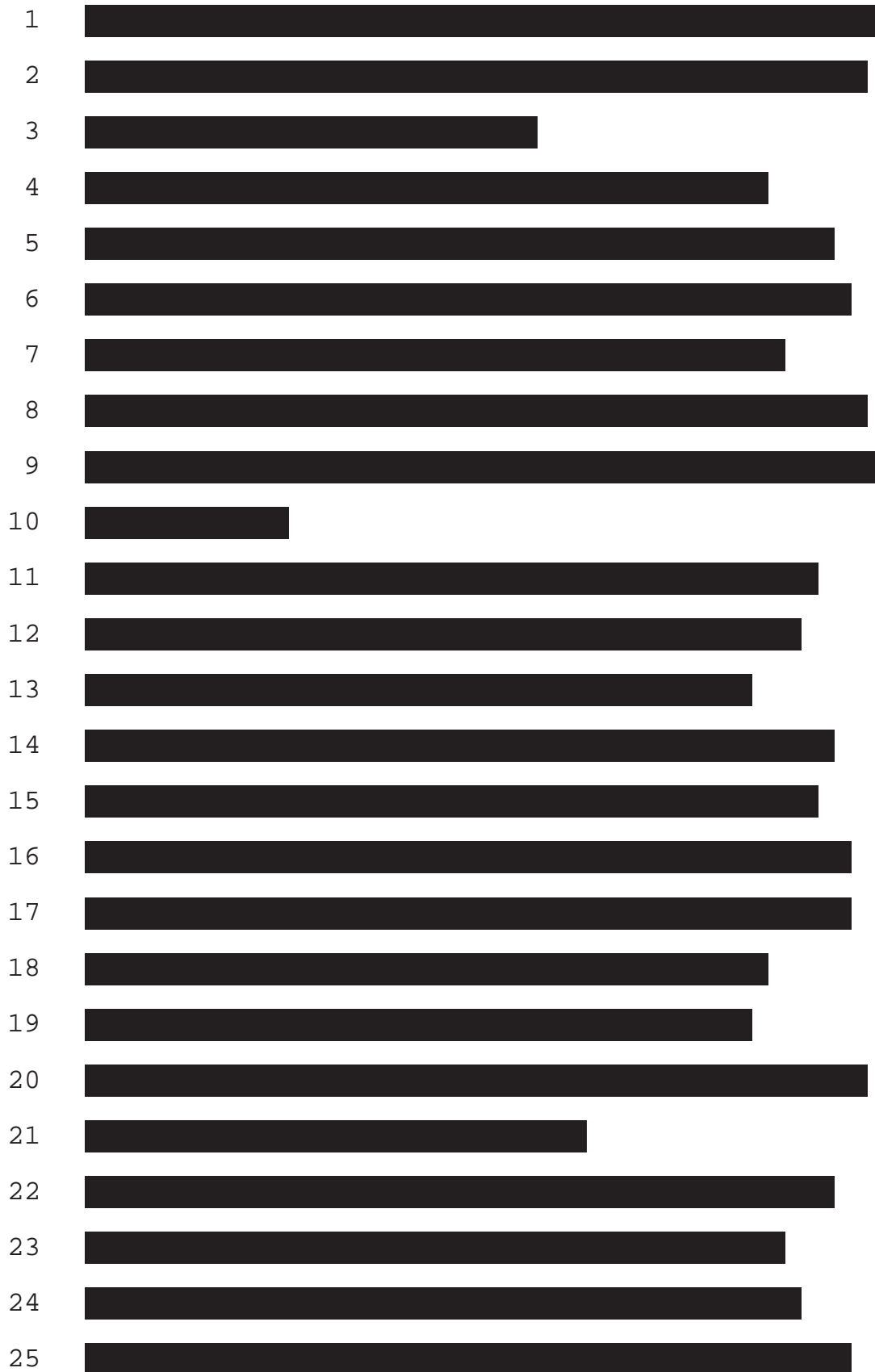








1	[REDACTED]
2	[REDACTED]
3	[REDACTED]
4	[REDACTED]
5	[REDACTED]
6	[REDACTED]
7	[REDACTED]
8	[REDACTED]
9	[REDACTED]
10	[REDACTED]
11	[REDACTED]
12	[REDACTED]
13	[REDACTED]
14	[REDACTED]
15	[REDACTED]
16	[REDACTED]
17	[REDACTED]
18	[REDACTED]
19	[REDACTED]
20	[REDACTED]
21	[REDACTED]
22	[REDACTED]
23	[REDACTED]
24	[REDACTED]
25	[REDACTED]



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Q. Okay. What would the impact be on the sales figures if another BT therapy was offered?

MR. HANSEN: Objection. Calls for speculation, hypothetical.

BY MR. WALZ:

Q. You can answer.

A. Bronchial thermoplasty meaning the application of energy to smooth muscle tissue?

Q. The treatment, right.

A. Potentially it would lessen our sales because there would be another competitor and another option out there.

MR. WALZ: I have no further questions.

CROSS EXAMINATION

BY MR. HANSEN:

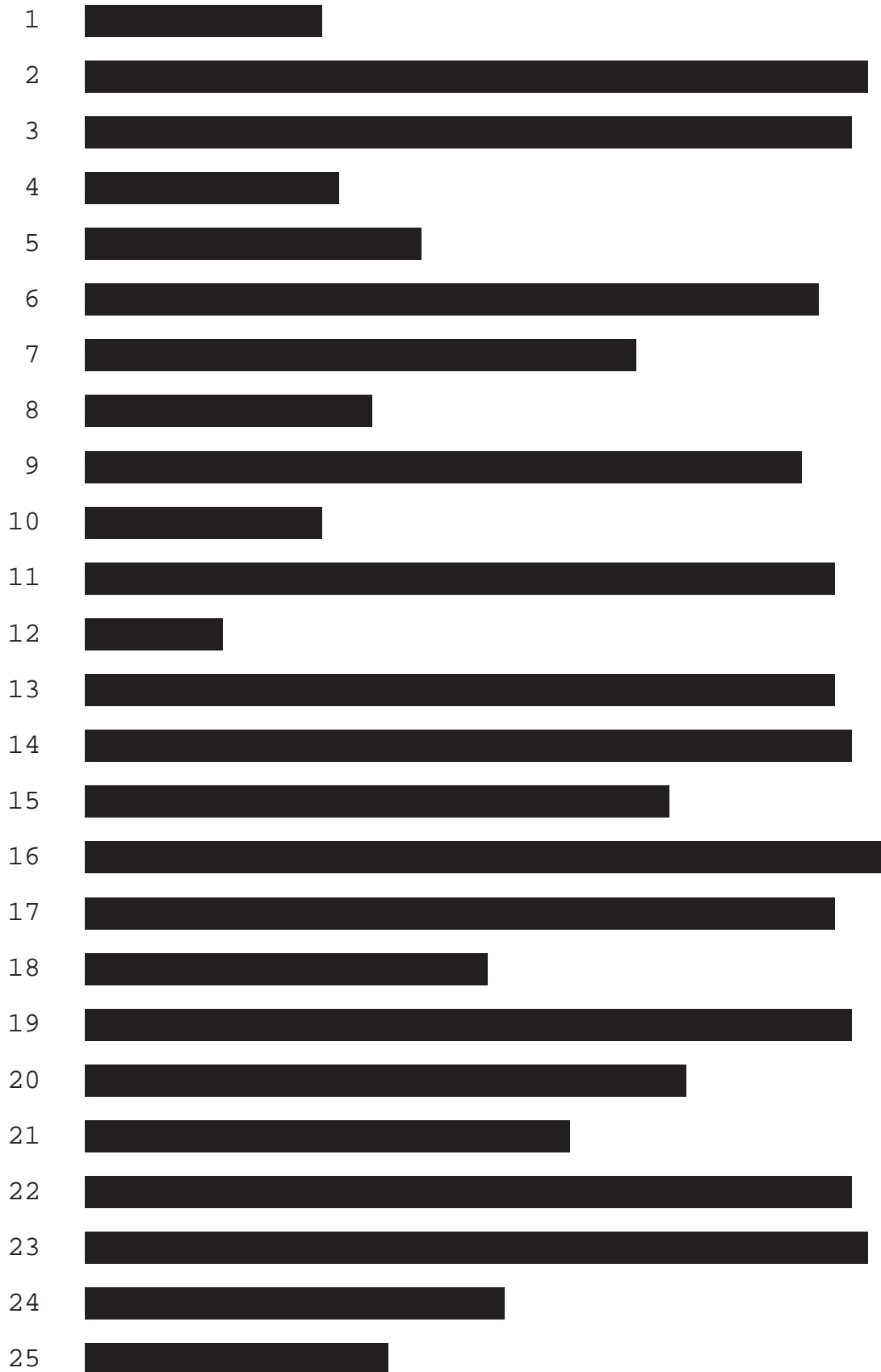
Q. Mr. Sprague, did I pronounce that correctly?

A. Yeah, you did. Thank you.

Q. Great. I'm actually pretty bad at that, so I'm glad I got it right.

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]







1

[REDACTED]

2

[REDACTED]

3

[REDACTED]

4

[REDACTED]

5

[REDACTED]

6

[REDACTED]

7

[REDACTED]

8

[REDACTED]

9

[REDACTED]

10

[REDACTED]

11

[REDACTED]

12

[REDACTED]

13

[REDACTED]

14

Q. Sales representatives, you talked

15

about sales representatives briefly, right?

16

A. Yes.

17

Q. And you attributed their work to being

18

impactful to the revenue numbers, right?

19

A. Yes.

20

Q. And with respect to Boston

21

Scientific's products, including the Alair

22

product, sales representatives are critical to

23

the promotion and sale of those products,

24

correct?

25

A. Correct.

1 Q. They're important because they have
2 relationships with the physicians who decide to
3 purchase the product, right?

4 A. Yes, they do.

5 Q. And those sales representatives train
6 those physicians on how to use the product?

7 A. In some cases, yes.

8 Q. And with respect to the Alair System?

9 A. It's not the only source of training,
10 but yes, the sales reps do demonstrate its use.

11 Q. Okay. You discussed a five year --
12 well, maybe I'm mischaracterizing it, but a
13 five-year strategic plan?

14 A. Correct.

15 Q. Is that kind of what it's called
16 within the business, five-year strategic plan?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And that has projected sales figures
19 out for the next five years?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. When was that strategic plan created?

22 [REDACTED]

23 Q. Okay. And when was the prior
24 iteration to May of 2014?

25 [REDACTED]

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Q. And did you provide that to your
counsel to produce in discovery in this case?

A. No, I did not.

Q. Okay. Did you review that in
preparation for your testimony today?

A. No.

Q. Is that something you just look at in
the regular course of your job duties?

A. Yeah, it's something I helped to
produce, so yes.

MR. HANSEN: I don't think I have any
more questions for you, Mr. Sprague.

MR. WALZ: None for me.

(Whereupon, the deposition was
concluded at 2:22 p.m.)

1 COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS)

2 SUFFOLK, SS.)

3 I, MAUREEN O'CONNOR POLLARD, RMR, CLR,
4 and Notary Public in and for the Commonwealth of
5 Massachusetts, do certify that on the 9th day of
6 April, 2015, at 1:57 o'clock, the person
7 above-named was duly sworn to testify to the
8 truth of their knowledge, and examined, and such
9 examination reduced to typewriting under my
10 direction, and is a true record of the testimony
11 given by the witness. I further certify that I
12 am neither attorney, related or employed by any
13 of the parties to this action, and that I am not
14 a relative or employee of any attorney employed
15 by the parties hereto, or financially interested
16 in the action.

17 In witness whereof, I have hereunto
18 set my hand this 19th day of April, 2015.

19 

20

21 MAUREEN O'CONNOR POLLARD, NOTARY PUBLIC
22 Realtime Systems Administrator
23 CSR #149108

24

25

1 INSTRUCTIONS TO WITNESS

2
3 Please read your deposition over
4 carefully and make any necessary corrections.
5 You should state the reason in the appropriate
6 space on the errata sheet for any corrections
7 that are made.

8 After doing so, please sign the
9 errata sheet and date it. It will be attached
10 to your deposition.

11 It is imperative that you return
12 the original errata sheet to the deposing
13 attorney within thirty (30) days of receipt of
14 the deposition transcript by you. If you fail
15 to do so, the deposition transcript may be
16 deemed to be accurate and may be used in court.

17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

1 - - - - -
 E R R A T A
2 - - - - -

3 PAGE LINE CHANGE

4 _____

5 REASON: _____

6 _____

7 REASON: _____

8 _____

9 REASON: _____

10 _____

11 REASON: _____

12 _____

13 REASON: _____

14 _____

15 REASON: _____

16 _____

17 REASON: _____

18 _____

19 REASON: _____

20 _____

21 REASON: _____

22 _____

23 REASON: _____

24 _____

25

ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF DEPONENT

I, Matthew Sprague, do
Hereby certify that I have read the foregoing
pages, and that the same is a correct
transcription of the answers given by me to the
questions therein propounded, except for the
corrections or changes in form or substance, if
any, noted in the attached Errata Sheet.

MWS
MATTHEW W. SPRAGUE

26-May-2015

DATE

Subscribed and sworn

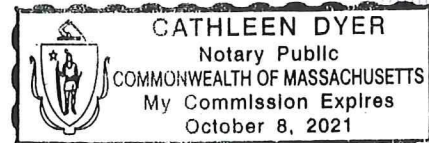
To before me this

26th day of May, 2015.

My commission expires: October 8, 2021

Cathleen Dyer

Notary Public



1 LAWYER'S NOTES

2 PAGE LINE

3 _____ _____ _____

4 _____ _____ _____

5 _____ _____ _____

6 _____ _____ _____

7 _____ _____ _____

8 _____ _____ _____

9 _____ _____ _____

10 _____ _____ _____

11 _____ _____ _____

12 _____ _____ _____

13 _____ _____ _____

14 _____ _____ _____

15 _____ _____ _____

16 _____ _____ _____

17 _____ _____ _____

18 _____ _____ _____

19 _____ _____ _____

20 _____ _____ _____

21 _____ _____ _____

22 _____ _____ _____

23 _____ _____ _____

24 _____ _____ _____

25 _____ _____ _____

